

07 April 2025

LOGGING AND MONITORING

R82

Administration Guide



Check Point Copyright Notice

© 2024 - 2025 Check Point Software Technologies Ltd.

All rights reserved. This product and related documentation are protected by copyright and distributed under licensing restricting their use, copying, distribution, and decompilation. No part of this product or related documentation may be reproduced in any form or by any means without prior written authorization of Check Point. While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this book, Check Point assumes no responsibility for errors or omissions. This publication and features described herein are subject to change without notice.

RESTRICTED RIGHTS LEGEND:

Use, duplication, or disclosure by the government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at DFARS 252.227-7013 and FAR 52.227-19.

TRADEMARKS:

Refer to the Copyright page for a list of our trademarks.

Refer to the <u>Third Party copyright notices</u> for a list of relevant copyrights and third-party licenses.

Important Information



Latest Software

We recommend that you install the most recent software release to stay up-todate with the latest functional improvements, stability fixes, security enhancements and protection against new and evolving attacks.



Certifications

For third party independent certification of Check Point products, see the <u>Check</u> <u>Point Certifications page</u>.



Check Point R82 For more about this release, see the R82 <u>home page</u>.



Latest Version of this Document in English Open the latest version of this document in a Web browser.

Download the latest version of this <u>document in a web browser</u>.



Feedback

Check Point is engaged in a continuous effort to improve its documentation. Please help us by sending your comments.

Revision History

Date	Description
07 April 2025	Updated: "Automatic Reactions" on page 131 "Working Hours" on page 141 "Exceptions" on page 142 "High Level Overview of Event Identification" on page 144 "Creating a User-Defined Event" on page 151
	 "System Administration" on page 166

Date	Description
01 April 2025	Updated "Tracking Options" on page 113
21 October 2024	First release of this document

Table of Contents

Introduction to Logging and Monitoring	15
Getting Started	16
Logging and Monitoring Clients	16
Understanding Logging	18
Configuring the Age of Log Files to Migrate During an Upgrade	19
Dedicated Log Servers and Domain Dedicated Log Servers	20
Dynamic Log Distribution	20
Log Storage	22
Daily Logs Retention	26
Log Receive Rate	31
Deploying Logging	32
Enabling Logging on the Security Management Server	32
Deploying a Dedicated Log Server	32
Configuring the Security Gateways for Logging	33
Enabling Log Indexing	33
Disabling Log Indexing	34
Deploying SmartEvent	35
SmartEvent Licensing	35
Enabling SmartEvent on the Security Management Server	35
System Requirements	37
Installing a Dedicated SmartEvent Server	37
Configuring the SmartEvent Components in the First Time Configuration Wizard \dots	38
Connecting R82 SmartEvent to R82 Security Management Server	38
Advanced Configuration for a dedicated SmartEvent Server that is also a Correlation Unit	39
Connecting R82 SmartEvent to R82 Multi-Domain Server	39
Configuring SmartEvent to use a Non-Standard LEA Port	41
Configuring SmartEvent to read External Logs	42

	Deploying a Domain Dedicated Log Server	43
	Introduction	43
	Procedure for an R82 Multi-Domain Environment	
	Procedure for an R77.x Multi-Domain Environment	
	Administrator Permission Profiles	
	Configuring Permissions for Monitoring, Logging, Events, and Reports	
	Multi-Domain Security Management	
	SmartEvent Reports-Only Permission Profile	49
	Importing Offline Log Files	50
	Importing Log Files from SmartEvent Servers	50
	Offline Work for Correlated Events	51
	Importing Syslog Messages	
	Generating a Syslog Parser and Importing syslog Messages	
	Configuring SmartEvent to Read Imported Syslog Messages	52
	Connecting an R82 SmartEvent to an R82 Security Management Server	53
	Advanced Configuration for a dedicated SmartEvent Server that is also a	53
V	Correlation Unit	
V	Correlation Unit	55
V	Correlation Unit	55 56
V	Correlation Unit /iews and Reports Enabling Views and Reports Catalog of Views and Reports	55
V	Correlation Unit /iews and Reports Enabling Views and Reports Catalog of Views and Reports Views	
V	Correlation Unit /iews and Reports Enabling Views and Reports Catalog of Views and Reports Views Reports	
V	Correlation Unit 'iews and Reports Enabling Views and Reports Catalog of Views and Reports Views Reports Automatic View and Report Updates	55 56 57 59 60 61
V	Correlation Unit 'iews and Reports Enabling Views and Reports Catalog of Views and Reports Views Reports Automatic View and Report Updates Opening a View or Report	55 56 57 59 60 61 62
V	Correlation Unit 'iews and Reports Enabling Views and Reports Catalog of Views and Reports Views Reports Automatic View and Report Updates Opening a View or Report MITRE ATT&CK in SmartView	55 56 57 59 60 61 62 63
V	Correlation Unit 'iews and Reports Enabling Views and Reports Catalog of Views and Reports Views Reports Automatic View and Report Updates Opening a View or Report MITRE ATT&CK in SmartView Exporting Views and Reports	55 56 57 59 60 61 62 63 65
V	Correlation Unit 'iews and Reports Enabling Views and Reports Catalog of Views and Reports Views Reports Automatic View and Report Updates Opening a View or Report MITRE ATT&CK in SmartView Exporting Views and Reports Generating a Network Activity Report	55 56 57 59 60 61 62 63 65 65
V	Correlation Unit Tiews and Reports Enabling Views and Reports Catalog of Views and Reports Views Reports Automatic View and Report Updates Opening a View or Report MITRE ATT&CK in SmartView Exporting Views and Reports Generating a Network Activity Report Sharing Reports	55 56 57 59 60 61 62 63 65 65 65
V	Correlation Unit 'iews and Reports Enabling Views and Reports Catalog of Views and Reports Views Reports Automatic View and Report Updates Opening a View or Report MITRE ATT&CK in SmartView Exporting Views and Reports Generating a Network Activity Report	55 56 57 59 60 61 62 63 65 65 65 66 69

Customizing a View or Report	71
View Settings	71
Copying Views to Other Reports	
Report Settings	
Configuring Email Settings for Views and Reports	
Configuring Email Server Settings	75
Configuring Email Recipients	
Adding a Logo to Reports	
Widgets	77
Adding and Customizing Widgets	77
Copying Widgets to other Locations	
Filters	
Filtering for Active Directory User Groups	
Logging	
Sample Log Analysis	
The Logs View	
Working with Logs	
Choosing Rules to Track	
Configuring Tracking in a Policy Rule	
Tracking Options	
Log Sessions	
Viewing Rule Logs	
Packet Capture	
Searching the Logs	
Selecting Query Fields	
Using the Action Filter	
Selecting Criteria from Table Columns	
Saving a New Query	
Viewing Search Results	
Customizing the Results Pane	

Creating Custom Queries	
Selecting Query Fields	
Selecting Criteria from Grid Columns	
Manually Entering Query Criteria	
Query Language Overview	
Criteria Values	
IP Addresses	
NOT Values	
Wildcards	
Field Keywords	
Boolean Operators	
Log Sessions	
Tracking Options	
SmartView Web Application	
Log Server High Availability	
Working with Syslog Servers	
Introduction	
Configuring Security Gateways	
Log Count for CoreXL Firewall Instances	
Event Analysis	
Event Analysis with SmartEvent	
What is an Event?	
How Are Logs Converted to Events?	
The SmartEvent Architecture	
SmartEvent Correlation Unit	
SmartEvent Correlation Unit High Availability	
The SmartView Web Application	
Configuring SmartEvent Policy and Settings	
Opening the SmartEvent GUI Client	
Policy Tab	

Save Event Policy	
Revert Changes	
Event Definitions and General Settings	
Event Definition Parameters	
Modifying Event Definitions	
Event Threshold	
Severity	
Automatic Reactions	
Automatic Reaction Types	
Creating an Automatic Reaction "Mail"	
Creating an Automatic Reaction "SNMP Trap"	
Creating an Automatic Reaction "Block Source"	
Creating an Automatic Reaction "Block Event Activity"	
Creating an Automatic Reaction "External Script"	
Assigning an Automatic Reaction to an Event	
Adding more fields to an Event	
Working Hours	
Exceptions	
High Level Overview of Event Identification	
Matching a Log Against Global Exclusions	
Matching a Log Against Each Event Definition	
Creating an Event Candidate	
Matching a Log Against Event Exclusion	
Event Generation	
Modifying Event Definitions	
Creating a User-Defined Event	
Creating a New Event Definition	
Customizing a User-Defined Event	
Eliminating False Positives	
Services that Generate Events	

Common Events by Service	
System Administration	
Adding a Host or Network Object to SmartEvent	
Defining the Internal Network	
Monitoring Traffic and Connections	
How SmartView Monitor Works	
AMON Protocol Support	
Defining Status Fetch Frequency	
To Start Monitoring	
SmartView Monitor Features	
SmartView Monitor Use Cases	
Immediate Actions	
Monitoring and Handling Alerts	
Viewing Alerts	
System Alert Monitoring Mechanism	
Monitoring Suspicious Activity Rules	
The Need for Suspicious Activity Rules	
Creating a Suspicious Activity Rule	
Creating a Suspicious Activity Rule from Results	
Managing Suspicious Activity Rules	
sam_alert	
Configuring Alerts and Thresholds in SmartView Monitor	
System Alerts and Thresholds	
Working with SNMP Monitoring Thresholds	
Types of Alerts	
Configuring SNMP Monitoring Thresholds	
Configuration Procedures	
Configure Global Alert Settings	
Configure Alert Destinations	
Configure Thresholds	

Completing the Configuration	
Monitoring SNMP Thresholds	
Customizing Results	
Editing a Custom View	
Creating a Custom Gateway Status View	
Creating a Custom Traffic View	
Creating a Custom Counters View	
Creating a Custom Tunnel View	
Creating a Custom Users View	
Custom View Example	
Exporting a Custom View	
Setting Your Default View	
Refreshing Views	
Monitoring Device Status	
Device Status	
Displaying Gateway Data	
System Information	
Firewall	
Virtual Private Networks	
QoS	
ClusterXL	
OPSEC	
Check Point Security Management	
SmartEvent Correlation Unit and the SmartEvent Server	
Anti-Virus and URL Filtering	
Multi-Domain Security Management	
The 'cpstat' Command	
Starting and Stopping Cluster Members	
Monitoring VPN Tunnels	
VPN Tunnels Solution	

VPN Tunnel View Updates	
Running VPN Tunnel Views	
Run a Down Tunnel View	
Run a Permanent Tunnel View	
Run a Tunnels on Community View	
Run Tunnels on Gateway View	
Monitoring Traffic or System Counters	
Traffic or System Counters Solution	
Traffic	
Traffic Legend Output	
System Counters	
Select and Run a Traffic or System Counters View	
Recording a Traffic or Counter View	
Play the Results of a Recorded Traffic or Counter View	
Pause or Stop the Results of a Recorded View that is Playing	
Monitoring Users	
Users Solution	
Run a Users View	
Run a User View for a Specified User	
Run a User View for all Users or Mobile Access Users	
Run a User View for a Specified Security Gateway	
Cooperative Enforcement Solution	
NAT Environments	
Configuring Cooperative Enforcement	
Non-Compliant Hosts by Gateway View	
Third-Party Log Formats	
Importing Syslog Messages	
Generating a Syslog Parser and Importing syslog Messages	
Configuring SmartEvent to Read Imported Syslog Messages	
Importing Windows Events	

How Windows Event Service Works	
Administrator Support for WinEventToCPLog	
Sending Windows Events to the Log Server	
Creating an OPSEC Object for Windows Event Service	
Configuring the Windows service	
Establishing Trust	
Configuring the Windows Audit Policy	
Working with SNMP	
Log Exporter	
Overview	
How Log Exporter Works	
Configuring Log Exporter in SmartConsole	
Configuring Log Exporter in CLI	
Log Exporter Basic Configuration in CLI	
Log Exporter Advanced Configuration in CLI	
Log Exporter TLS Configuration	
Log Exporter Advanced Configuration Parameters	
Log Exporter Instructions for Specific SIEM	
Rsyslog	
ArcSight	
Splunk	
QRadar	
Transition from LEA to Log Exporter	
Transition from CPLogToSyslog to Log Exporter	
Log Exporter - Appendix	
Special Log Fields	
Syslog-NG Listener Configuration	
Splunk Listener Configuration	
ArcSight Listener Configuration	
QRadar Log Event Extended Format (LEEF) Mapping	

Logs in Milliseconds	
API for Logs	
Overview	
Configuration	
Limitations	
Log Attachments API	
Command Line Reference	
Appendix: Manual Syslog Parsing	
Planning and Considerations	
The Parsing Procedure	
Manual Syslog Parsing	
The Free Text Parsing Language	
The Commands	
Try	
Group_try	
Switch	
Unconditional_try	
Include	
Add_field	
Dictionary	
The Parsing Procedure	
Glossary	

Introduction to Logging and Monitoring

Check Point provides comprehensive logging and monitoring capabilities, integrating security data, event management, reporting, and policy enforcement into a unified system. Administrators can efficiently access security trends and details through customizable widgets and chart templates, allowing for clear, visual representation of data at a glance. Logs are seamlessly integrated with security policy rules, enabling quick access to logs associated with specific rules. By simply selecting a rule, admin can view the related logs and events instantly.

Powerful free-text search capabilities allow users to retrieve results from millions of logs in seconds, offering quick insights into specific incidents Administrators can move effortlessly between high-level overviews and detailed event information, such as attack types, timelines, applications, and sources. Based on event severity, you can choose to ignore, delay action, block, or refine policy rules directly linked to the event for real-time adjustments.

The system also facilitates reporting, enabling the creation of tailored reports for managers, auditors, or stakeholders, focusing only on relevant content. This functionality is integrated within the unified SmartConsole platform, providing access to rich, customizable views for both log analysis and event monitoring.

For web-based access, the SmartView application allows administrators to browse logs and monitor data remotely through a browser by connecting to the Security Management Server or SmartEvent Server.

These integrated tools streamline incident investigation, policy refinement, and reporting, making Check Point a powerful solution for proactive security management.

Getting Started

This section introduces the logging and monitoring clients, and explains how to install and configure logging and monitoring products.

Logging and Monitoring Clients

Monitor logs and events using customizable views and reports. Use these GUI clients:

GUI Client	Description					
SmartConsole > Logs & Events	Analyze events that occur in your environment with customizable views and reports. The Logs view replaces the SmartView Tracker and SmartLog GUI clients.					
SmartView Web Application	It has the same real-time event monitoring and analysis views as SmartConsole, with the convenience of not having to install a client. Browse to: https:// <server ip="">/smartview/, where <server IP> is IP address of the Security Management Server or SmartEvent Server.</server </server>					
CPView	On Security Gateways, shows the rate of the generated logs. On Management Servers / Log Servers, shows the rate of the received logs, indexed logs, and exported logs. For the information, see <u>sk101878</u> .					

These GUI clients are still supported:

GUI Clients	Description						
SmartEvent	 For initial settings - configure the SmartEvent Correlation Unit, Log Server, Domains and Internal Network. For the correlation policy (event definitions) For Automatic Reactions 						
SmartView Monitor	 To monitor tunnels To monitor users For suspicious activity rules To monitor alerts - Thresholds configuration For more about monitoring, see "Monitoring Traffic and Connections" on page 169. 						

SmartView GUI Clients

Administrator access permissions can be limited by the GUI Clients list based on IP address, IP range, a network or a host name. This list is based on the GUI clients' access configuration as defined on the relevant Security Management Server or a Multi-Domain Server.

See the <u>*R82 Security Management Administration Guide* > Chapter Managing Administrator Accounts > Section Defining Trusted Clients.</u>

To open the SmartEvent GUI:

- 1. Open SmartConsole > Logs & Events.
- 2. Click (+) for a Catalog (new tab).
- 3. In the External Apps section, click **SmartEvent Settings & Policy**.

To open the SmartView Monitor GUI:

- 1. Open SmartConsole > Logs & Events.
- 2. Click (+) for a Catalog (new tab).
- 3. In the External Apps section, click **Tunnel & User Monitoring**.

Understanding Logging

Security Gateways / Cluster Members generate network logs, and the Management Server generates audit logs, which are a record of actions taken by administrators. The Security Policy that is installed on each Security Gateway / Cluster determines which rules generate logs.

Logs can be stored on a:

- Management Server that receives logs from the managed Security Gateways / Clusters. This is the default.
- Log Server on a dedicated machine. This is recommended for organizations that generate a lot of logs.
- Security Gateways / Cluster Members. This is called local logging.
- Note Logs can be automatically forwarded to the Security Management Server or Log Server, according to a schedule, or manually imported with the Remote File Management operation via CLI (with the "fw fetchlogs" command). The management servers and log servers can also forward logs to other servers.

To find out how much storage is necessary for logging, see the <u>R82 Release Notes</u>.

A Log Server handles log management activities:

- Automatically starts a new log file when the existing log file gets to the defined maximum size.
- Stores log files for export and import.
- Makes an index of the logs to enable faster responses to log queries.
 - Notes:
 - SmartLog Indexing mode is not enabled by default after upgrade or new installation, on Smart-1 205, Smart-1 210, or Open Servers with less than 4 cores.
 - To change SmartLog mode from Indexing to Non-Indexing on a Domain Management Server or Domain Log Server, edit the Domain Server object on the Domain level. There is no option to change the entire Multi-Domain Server or Multi-Domain Log Server to Non-Indexing mode.

An administrator can configure Backup Log Servers:

- If all Primary Log Servers are disconnected, the Security Gateway / Cluster starts to send logs only to the first configured Backup Log Server.
- If the first Backup Log Server is also disconnected, the Security Gateway / Cluster sends logs to the second configured Backup Log Server, and so on.

Configuring the Age of Log Files to Migrate During an Upgrade

Starting in R81.20, when you upgrade a Management Server / Log Server to a new version, log file migration to the new version is limited to logs for the past 180 days.

You can change the age of log files to a number between 30 and 360 days.

To configure the number of days for log file migration:

Important - You must do this procedure before you upgrade.

Procedure

- Connect to the command line on the server (Security Management Server, Multi-Domain Server, Multi-Domain Log Server, dedicated Log Server, dedicated SmartEvent Server):
- 2. Log in to the Expert mode.
- 3. Create the required XML file:

touch \$FWDIR/conf/upgradeLogData.xml

4. Edit this XML file:

vi \$FWDIR/conf/upgradeLogData.xml

5. This XML file must contain these lines:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<config>
<ImportLogDays>NUMBER_OF_DAYS</ImportLogDays>
</config>
```

The number of days must be an integer between 30 and 360.

6. Save the changes in the file and exit the editor.

Dedicated Log Servers and Domain Dedicated Log Servers

To decrease the load on the Management Server, you can install a dedicated Log Server and configure the Security Gateways to send their logs to this Log Server.

To see the logs from all Log Servers, connect to the Management Server with SmartConsole, and go to the Logs & Events view > Logs tab.

See:

- "Deploying Logging" on page 32
- "Deploying a Domain Dedicated Log Server" on page 43

Dynamic Log Distribution

In R81 and lower versions, each Log Server received a copy of every log. If one Log Server was disconnected, the Security Gateway / Cluster connected to the backup Log Server and sent it a copy of every log.

Starting in R81.10, with Dynamic Log Distribution, you can configure the Security Gateway / Cluster to distribute its logs between the active Log Servers.

If all the primary Log Servers are disconnected, logs are distributed between backup Log Servers.

If no Log Servers are connected, the Security Gateway / Cluster writes the logs locally.

Use Case - Log distribution reduces:

- The high utilization of resources on the Log Servers.
- The log traffic on each network that connects the Security Gateway / Cluster to its Log Server.

Configuring log distribution between multiple Log Servers

- 1. Connect with SmartConsole to the Management Server that manages this Security Gateway / Cluster.
- 2. From the left navigation panel, click Gateways & Servers.
- 3. Open the Security Gateway / Cluster object.
- 4. From the left tree, click **Logs** > **Log Distribution**.
- 5. In the section Log Distribution, select Distribute logs between log servers for improved performance (applies to primary and backup log servers).
- In the section Log Servers > Primary log server, select the applicable primary Log Server object(s).

- In the section Log Servers > Backup log server, select the applicable backup Log Server object(s).
- 8. Click OK.
- 9. Publish the SmartConsole session.
- 10. Install the Access Control policy on the Security Gateway / Cluster object.

Log Storage

SmartEvent Server and Log Server use an optimization algorithm to manage disk space and other system resources. When the Logs and Events database becomes too large, the server automatically deletes the oldest logs and events based on the configured thresholds.

Procedure for a Management Server / SmartEvent Server / Log Server

- 1. Connect with SmartConsole to the Management Server.
- 2. From the left navigation panel, click Gateways & Servers.
- 3. Open the object of the Management Server / SmartEvent Server / Log Server.
- 4. From the left tree, go to **Logs** > **Storage**.

Note - The Logs section appears only if you enabled the Logging & Status
 Software Blade on the General Properties page > Management tab.

5. In the **Disk Management** section, configure these settings:

Field	Description / Instructions					
Measure free disk space in	Select MBytes or Percentage .					
When disk space is below <number> Mbytes, issue alert <type></type></number>	Get an alert when the available disk space for logs and log index files is below this threshold. This value must be at least 5 MB greater than the value in the When disk space is below <number> Mbytes, stop logging</number> field on the Additional Logging Configuration page.					
When disk space is below <number> Mbytes, start deleting old files</number>	Delete the oldest logs and log index files when the available disk space is below this threshold. The server examines the available space in the log partition every 1 minute. When the threshold is reached, the log disk maintenance occurs- deleting the oldest day of log and index data and repeating until reaching the available space above the configured threshold. This value must be at least 5 MB greater than the value in the When disk space is below <number> Mbytes, issue alert</number> < type> field on this page.					
Run the following script before deleting old files	Enter an absolute path to the shell script (path and the file name). This shell script must exist on the server.					

6. In the Daily Logs Retention Configuration section, configure these settings:

For more information, see "Daily Logs Retention" on page 26.

First, select Apply the following logs retention policy.

Field	Description / Instructions					
Keep indexed logs for no longer than <number> days</number>	Occurs daily at midnight. Deleting oldest index files by days , keeping today + the configured number of index days (14 = 14 days + today).					
Keep log files for an extra <number> days</number>	Occurs daily at midnight. Deleting oldest log files by days, keeping today + the configured number of index days + extra log days (3664 = 14 [from index settings] + 3650 days + today). As 3664 is more than 10 years, effectively keeping all log files.					

Note - The maximum total value of both indexed logs and log files is 3664 days.

- 7. Click OK.
- 8. Publish the SmartConsole session.
- Install the database (click Menu > Install database > select all server objects > click Install)

Procedure for a Security Gateway / Cluster

- 1. Connect with SmartConsole to the Management Server.
- 2. From the left navigation panel, click Gateways & Servers.
- 3. Open the object of the Security Gateway / Cluster.
- 4. From the left tree, go to **Logs** > **Storage**.
- 5. In the **Disk Management** section, configure these settings:

Field	Description / Instructions
Measure free disk space in	Select MBytes or Percentage .

Field	Description / Instructions					
When disk space is below <number> Mbytes, issue alert <type></type></number>	Get an alert when the available disk space for logs and log index files is below this threshold. This value must be at least 5 MB greater than the value in the When disk space is below <number> Mbytes, stop logging</number> field on the Additional Logging Configuration page.					
When disk space is below <number> Mbytes, start deleting old filesDelete the oldest logs and log index files when the avail space is below this threshold. The server examines the available space in the log part every 1 minute. When the threshold is reached, the log maintenance occurs- deleting the oldest day of log and data and repeating until reaching the available space at configured threshold. This value must be at least 5 MB greater than the value When disk space is below <number> Mbytes, issue at <type> field on this page.</type></number></number>						
Run the following script before deleting old files	Enter an absolute path to the shell script (path and the file name). This shell script must exist on the server.					
Reserve <number> <units> for packet capturing</units></number>	Some types of logs can also capture the packets that created the log event. Set the amount, in megabytes or percent, that you want to use for captured packets.					

6. In the Daily Logs Retention Configuration section, configure these settings:

For more information, see "Daily Logs Retention" on page 26.

First, select Apply the following logs retention policy.

Field	Description / Instructions				
Keep indexed logs	Occurs daily at midnight.				
for no longer than	Deleting oldest index files by days , keeping today + the				
<number> days</number>	configured number of index days (14 = 14 days + today).				

Field	Description / Instructions
Keep log files for an extra <number> days</number>	Occurs daily at midnight. Deleting oldest log files by days, keeping today + the configured number of index days + extra log days (3664 = 14 [from index settings] + 3650 days + today). As 3664 is more than 10 years, effectively keeping all log files.

1 Note - The maximum total value of both indexed logs and log files is 3664 days.

- 7. Click OK.
- 8. Publish the SmartConsole session.
- 9. Install the Access Control policy on the Security Gateway / Cluster object.

Examples

For these examples, the administrator enables these thresholds:

- When disk space is below [5000] Mbytes, start deleting old files
- Daily logs retention
 - Keep indexed logs for 14 days
 - Keep log files for an extra 6 days (6 + 14 = 20 days of log files)

Example	Description
1	The server has 3000 MBytes of free disk space, and 5 days of logs and index files. The server deletes logs and index files, one day at a time, until there is 5000 Mbytes of free disk space.
2	The server has 10 GBytes of free disk space and 30 days of logs and index files. The server deletes all log files older than 20 days ago (6 + 14), each day at midnight. The server deletes all index files older than 14 days ago, each day at midnight.

Example	Description		
3	A server produces 1GB of logs and 1GB of index files each day. The server now has 35 days of logs and 30 days of index files and only 2.5GB of free disk space left. The configured disk space threshold is 5GB, which means the server is now 2.5GB below the threshold. The index files threshold is 14 days. The log file threshold is 20 days. When the disk space threshold (5GB) is reached, disk space maintenance deletes logs and index data until there is again more than 5GB of free space. In this example:		
	 Logs from day one are deleted first, as they are older. Three days of the oldest logs are deleted to clear 3GB of logs and leave 6GB of free space on the drive, 1GB above the threshold, leaving the server with 32 log days and 30 index days. The server still has more than 14 days of index files - an extra 16 days (30 days of index files now) And more than 20 days of logs - an extra 12 days (32 days of log files now). At midnight, the extra log & index files are deleted until only the current day's log files plus the last 20 days remain. Index days are deleted until only the current day's index plus the last 14 days remain. The deletion of three days of logs left 5.5GB of free space. The deletion of 12 log file days + 16 index file days frees up a total of 28GB (12 + 16) of space. 33.5GB of space is now free. The daily logs retention occurs every day at midnight keeping the chosen number of days of log + index data. Most likely, this means it will never reach the log disk space threshold. But if the log disk space threshold is again reached, the log disk maintenance process repeats to make sure space never runs out. 		

Daily Logs Retention

In R80.40 and higher, daily logs retention refers to how long logs are stored before they are deleted. Configure this value to help you manage free disk space.

The Management Server does **not** delete **audit log files**, even in a case of emergency disk space maintenance, regardless of the configured log retention value. You cannot configure the daily retention for the Management Server audit logs.

The Management Server does **not** delete **audit indexes** as part of daily maintenance regardless of the value configured in SmartConsole. The Management Server deletes audit log indexes (not the log files) only in a disk space emergency. In a Multi-Domain environment, you can change this behavior only for the Global SmartEvent Server in the log_maintenance_domain_conf.csv file (see the corresponding section below).

Note - The server deletes old logs daily at midnight.

You can configure log retention policy on different servers:

Configuring daily logs retention for a Security Management Server / dedicated SmartEvent Server / dedicated Log Server

- 1. Connect with SmartConsole to the applicable server:
 - Security Management Server if managed Security Gateways send their logs to it
 - Security Management Server that manages the dedicated SmartEvent Server or dedicated Log Server
- 2. From the left navigation panel, click Gateways & Servers.
- 3. Open the object of the Management Server / dedicated SmartEvent Server / dedicated Log Server.
- 4. From the left tree, go to **Logs** > **Storage**.
- 5. In the section Daily Logs Retention Configuration:
 - a. Select Apply the following logs retention policy.
 - b. In the field **Keep indexed logs for no longer than <number> days**, configure the required number of days.
 - c. In the field **Keep log files for an extra <number> days**, configure the required number of days.



- When this value is 0, the servers keeps the indexed logs and the log files for the same number of days.
- If you configure a value greater than 0, the server keeps the log files for the **additional** configured number of days (after the configured number of days for indexed logs).

Note - The maximum total value of both indexed logs and log files is 3664 days.

- 6. Click OK.
- 7. Publish the SmartConsole session.

 Install the database (click Menu > Install database > select all server objects > click Install).

Configuring daily logs retention in a Multi-Domain environment - for all Domain Management Servers / Domain Log Servers



- Only Super User can configure these settings.
- This configuration applies to all Domain Management Servers and Domain Log Servers that are not configured explicitly (see the corresponding section).
- The daily index deletion on the Multi-Domain Server / Multi-Domain Log Server is enforced based on the greatest value configured between the Domain and the Multi-Domain Server levels.
- 1. Connect with SmartConsole to the applicable Multi-Domain Server / Multi-Domain Log Server to the **MDS** context.
- 2. From the left navigation panel, click **Multi-Domain > Domains**.
- 3. In the table, locate the column for this Multi-Domain Server / Multi-Domain Log Server.
- 4. Right-click the cell for this Multi-Domain Server / Multi-Domain Log Server and click Edit.

The Multi-Domain Server window opens.

- 5. From the left tree, go to **Log Settings > General**.
- 6. In the section Daily Logs Retention Configuration:
 - a. Select Apply the following logs retention policy.
 - b. In the field **Keep indexed logs for no longer than <number> days**, configure the required number of days.
 - c. In the field **Keep log files for an extra <number> days**, configure the required number of days.

Notes:

- When this value is 0, the servers keep the logs and the indexed logs for the same number of days.
- If you configure a value greater than 0, the server keeps the logs for the additional configured number of days.

Note - The maximum total value of both indexed logs and log files is 3664 days.

- 7. Click OK.
- 8. Publish the SmartConsole session.

Configuring daily logs retention in a Multi-Domain environment - for a specific Domain Management Server / Domain Log Server

- Notes:
 - Only Super User can configure these settings.
 - By default, all Domain Management Servers use the settings a Super User configured in the Multi-Domain Server / Multi-Domain Log Server object.
 - The Multi-Domain Server / Multi-Domain Log Server deletes a log index only when no Domains use this log index.
 For example, if you configured one Domain to keep its log index for 5 days and another Domain to keep its log index for 30 days, then the server deletes the log index only after 30 days.
 - 1. Connect with SmartConsole to the applicable Domain Management Server.
 - 2. From the left navigation panel, click Gateways & Servers.
 - 3. Open the object of the Domain Management Server / Domain Log Server.
 - 4. From the left tree, go to **Logs** > **Storage**.
 - 5. In the section Daily Logs Retention Configuration:
 - a. Select Override Multi-Domain Settings.
 - b. In the field **Keep indexed logs for no longer than <number> days**, configure the required number of days.
 - c. In the field **Keep log files for an extra <number> days**, configure the required number of days.
 - Notes:
 - When this value is 0, the servers keep the logs and the indexed logs for the same number of days.
 - If you configure a value greater than 0, the server keeps the logs for the additional configured number of days.

Note - The maximum total value of both indexed logs and log files is 3664 days.

- 6. Click OK.
- 7. Publish the SmartConsole session.
- Install the database (click Menu > Install database > select all server objects > click Install)

Configuring daily logs retention in a Multi-Domain environment - for a Global SmartEvent Server

You must configure the required settings only in the corresponding configuration file:

Settings	Configuration File	Comment
General settings that apply to all Domain Management Servers that use this Global SmartEvent Server	log_policy_ extended.C	See <u>sk117317</u>
Settings that apply to only to a specific Domain Management Server that uses this Global SmartEvent Server	log_ maintenance_ domain_conf.csv	See below

ID Note - If you do not configure settings explicitly, then the default values apply.

To configure settings for specific Domain Management Servers:

- 1. Connect to the command line on the Multi-Domain Server over SSH.
- 2. Log in to the Expert mode.
- 3. Back up the current file:

```
cp -v $RTDIR/conf/log_maintenance_domain_conf.csv{,_
ORIGINAL}
```

4. Get the contents of the current file:

cat \$RTDIR/conf/log maintenance domain conf.csv

- 5. On your computer, copy the two lines from this file (from the SSH session) into a text editor or table editor (like Microsoft Excel, or LibreOffice Calc).
- 6. Save the file in the CSV format with this name:

```
log_maintenance_domain_conf.csv
```

7. Configure the names of Domains and the required number of days to keep the logs.

Best Practice - Add the row with the Domain name "default" and configure the default values. Each new Domain you create automatically uses these default values.

Example for "Domain1" and "Domain2":

Domai n_name	audit	files	firewallandv pn	other	other- smartlo g	resourc es	smarteve nt
Domain 1	3650	20	15	15	14	14	30
Domain 2	3650	20	30	30	14	14	14
default	3650	30	14	14	14	14	14

Note - If you do not configure a Domain explicitly, then it takes the greatest values from each column. In the example, if there is a Domain called "Domain3", but you do not configure it explicitly in this file, then this Domain uses the values "3650, 20, 30, 30, 14, 14, 14, 30".

- 8. Copy the modified CSV file from your computer to the Multi-Domain Server to some directory (for example, /var/log/).
- 9. Go back to the SSH session on the Multi-Domain Server.
- 10. If you edited this CSV file on Windows OS, then convert the file from the DOS format to the UNIX format:

dos2unix /var/log/log_maintenance_domain_conf.csv

11. Replace the current file with the modified file:

```
cp -f -v /var/log/log_maintenance_domain_conf.csv
$RTDIR/conf/log_maintenance_domain_conf.csv
```

```
cat $RTDIR/conf/log_maintenance_domain_conf.csv
```

12. Restart Check Point services:

mdsstop ; mdsstart

Log Receive Rate

To learn how to monitor the Log Receive Rate on the Management Server / Log Server, see $\frac{sk120341}{2}$.

Deploying Logging

You can enable logging on the Security Management Server (enabled by default), or deploy a dedicated Log Server.

After you deploy the Log Server, you must configure the Security Gateways for logging.

You must execute the **Install Database** function on the remote Log Server when you:

- Enable or disable a logging related blade or function, including Log Indexing in a server object.
- Add a new Log Server to the system.
- Change a Security Gateway's Log Server.
- Change a Log Server's log settings or make any other Log Server object change.
- Change anything in the Global Properties that might affect the Log Server.

Enabling Logging on the Security Management Server

- 1. Open SmartConsole.
- 2. Edit the network object of the Security Management Server.
- 3. In the General Properties page, on the Management tab, enable Logging & Status.
- 4. Click OK
- 5. Publish the SmartConsole session.

Deploying a Dedicated Log Server

To deploy a dedicated Log Server, you must install it, and then connect it to the Security Management Server.

Notes:

- If you configure the Global SmartEvent Server and the dedicated Log Server to read logs from the same domain, you receive duplicate logs.
- When you delete a Log Server object, and create it again with the same object name and the same IP address, the Log Server does not show logs that it received before the deletion.

For details, see the *<u>R82 Installation and Upgrade Guide</u>*.

Configuring the Security Gateways for Logging

To configure a Security Gateway for logging:

- 1. Open SmartConsole.
- 2. In the Gateways & Servers view, double-click the Security Gateway object.
- 3. From the navigation tree, click **Logs**.
- 4. Configure where to send logs:
 - To save logs to the Security Management Server Select Send gateway logs to server.
 - To save logs to a dedicated Log Server Select the Log Server from the list.
 - To save logs locally Select **Save logs locally, on this server**.
- 5. Click OK.
- 6. Publish the SmartConsole session.
- 7. Install a policy on the Security Gateway.

Enabling Log Indexing

Log indexing on the Security Management Server or Log Server reduces the time it takes to run a query on the logs. Log indexing is enabled by default.

In a standalone deployment, log indexing is disabled by default. Enable log indexing only if the standalone server CPU has 4 or more cores.

To manually enable Log Indexing:

- 1. Open SmartConsole.
- 2. From the **Gateways & Servers** view, double-click the Security Management Server or Log Server object.

The General Properties window opens.

- 3. In the Management tab, select Logging & Status.
- 4. From the navigation tree, click **Logs**.
- 5. Select Enable Log Indexing.
- 6. Click OK.
- 7. Publish the SmartConsole session.
- 8. From Menu, select Install Database > select all objects > click Install.

Disabling Log Indexing

To save disk storage space, a Log Server can be configured to work in non-index mode. If you disable log indexing, queries will take longer.

When log indexing is disabled, you must connect with SmartConsole to each Log Server separately to query its logs. When you connect to the Management Server you do not get a unified view of all logs, as in index mode. On each Log Server, the search is done on one log file at a time.

To disable Log Indexing:

- 1. Open SmartConsole.
- 2. From the **Gateways & Servers** view, double-click the Security Management Server or Log Server object.
- 3. From the navigation tree, click **Logs**.
- 4. Clear the Enable Log Indexing option.
- 5. Click OK.
- 6. Publish the SmartConsole session.
- 7. From Menu, select Install Database > select all objects > click Install.

To select a log file to search:

- 1. Open Logs & Events > Logs view.
- 2. Click the **Options** menu button to the right of the search bar.
- 3. Select File > Open Log File.

Deploying SmartEvent

SmartEvent Server is integrated with the Security Management Server architecture. It communicates with Log Servers to read and analyze logs. You can enable SmartEvent on the Security Management Server or deploy it as a dedicated server.

Only a Security Management Server can also work as a SmartEvent Server. In a Multi-Domain environment, you must install SmartEvent on a dedicated server.

You must execute the Install Database function on the remote SmartEvent Server when you:

- Enable or disable a SmartEvent Server blade, including Log Indexing in a server object.
- Add a new SmartEvent Server to the system.
- Change a SmartEvent Server log settings or make any other SmartEvent Server object change.
- Change anything in the Global Properties that might affect the SmartEvent Server.

SmartEvent Licensing

You can deploy SmartEvent in these ways:

- As part of the SmartEvent A renewable one year license is included with the SmartEvent package.
- As a dedicated server You can purchase a perpetual license for a SmartEvent Server.

Enabling SmartEvent on the Security Management Server

- 1. Open SmartConsole.
- 2. From the left navigation panel, click Gateways & Servers.
- 3. Open the Security Management Server object.
- 4. On the Management tab, enable these Software Blades:
 - Logging & Status
 - SmartEvent Server
 - SmartEvent Correlation Unit
- 5. Click OK.
- 6. Publish the SmartConsole session.

Note - For Security Gateways R77.30 and lower, you must activate the Firewall session for the network activity report. See "*Exporting Views and Reports*" on page 65.

Note - When the trial license of SmartEvent expires, and after adding a new license, the Security Management Server does not accept any connection.
 To resolve this issue: stop and start the Security Management Server (run cpstop; cpstart) after adding the new license.

System Requirements

For versions earlier than R81, the SmartEvent Server from one version can be managed by multiple management versions.

	Management Server version							
SmartEvent Server version	R77.30	R80	R80.10	R80.20	R80.30	R80.40		
R77.30	~	_	_	-	_	_		
R80	~	~	_	-	-	-		
R80.10	~	~	~	_	_	_		
R80.20.M1	~	~	~	~	-	-		
R80.30	~	~	~	~	~	_		
R80.40	~	~	\checkmark	~	\checkmark	~		

Management Server support for SmartEvent Server

Starting from R81, SmartEvent server can only be managed by a Security Management Server of the same version. Managing SmartEvent by a lower version of the Security Management Server is no longer supported.

To use SmartEvent, see the requirements in the <u>R82 Release Notes</u>.

Installing a Dedicated SmartEvent Server

For information on how to install a SmartEvent Server, see the <u>R82 Installation and Upgrade</u> <u>Guide</u>.

- 1. Download the installation ISO file.
- 2. Install the ISO on a Smart-1 appliance or an open server.

Allocate partition size:

- Root partition: at least 20 GB
- Logs partition: more than allocated for Root and backup (set maximum possible) to let the server keep a long history.
- 3. When prompted, reboot.
- 4. Run the Gaia First Time Configuration Wizard.

Configuring the SmartEvent Components in the First Time Configuration Wizard

Configure the components of the dedicated server for SmartEvent on a Smart-1 appliance, or on an open server.

For information on how to install a SmartEvent Server, see the <u>R82 Installation and Upgrade</u> <u>Guide</u>.

Connecting R82 SmartEvent to R82 Security Management Server

This procedure explains how to configure a dedicated server for these cated server for these SmartEvent components:

- SmartEvent Server
- SmartEvent Correlation Unit

Note - For information on how to install a dedicated SmartEvent Server, see the <u>*R82</u> <u><i>Installation and Upgrade Guide*</u>.</u>

To connect R82 SmartEvent Server and SmartEvent Correlation Unit to R82 Security Management Server:

- 1. In SmartConsole, create a new **Check Point Host** object for the dedicated SmartEvent Server.
- 2. In the Version field, select R82.
- 3. Create the SIC trust with the dedicated SmartEvent Server.
- 4. On the Management tab, enable these Software Blades:
 - Logging & Status
 - SmartEvent Server
 - SmartEvent Correlation Unit
- 5. On a dedicated SmartEvent Server that is not a Log Server (recommended):

In the Logs page, make sure that Enable Log Indexing is not selected.

This ensures that Firewall connections (which are not relevant for views and reports) are not indexed.

- 6. Click OK.
- 7. Publish the SmartConsole session.
- 8. Click Menu > Install Database > select all objects > click Install.

Note - For Security Gateways R77.30 and lower: activate the Firewall session for the network activity report. See "*Exporting Views and Reports*" on page 65.

Advanced Configuration for a dedicated SmartEvent Server that is also a Correlation Unit

- 1. Open the SmartEvent GUI:
 - a. In SmartConsole > Logs & Events, click + to open a catalog (new tab).
 - b. Click SmartEvent Settings & Policy.
- 2. In **Policy tab > Correlation Units**, define a Correlation Unit object.
- 3. Select the production Log Servers and local Log Server on the SmartEvent Server to read logs from.
- 4. In **Policy tab > Internal Network**, define the internal Network.
- 5. Click Save.
- 6. Install the Event Policy on the Correlation Unit:

SmartEvent menu > Actions > Install Event Policy.

Connecting R82 SmartEvent to R82 Multi-Domain Server

You can configure a dedicated R82 server for SmartEvent components, and connect them to one or more Domains in an R82 Multi-Domain Security Management environment.

This procedure explains how to configure a dedicated server for these SmartEvent components:

- SmartEvent Server
- SmartEvent Correlation Unit

Notes:

- From R81, you can configure the SmartEvent Server and SmartEvent Correlation Unit at the level of the Global Domain and at the level of a specific Domain.
- Configure SmartEvent to read logs from one Domain or a number of Domains.

Connecting an R82 SmartEvent Server and SmartEvent Correlation Unit to a Global Domain on an R82 Multi-Domain Server

- 1. Connect with SmartConsole to the Global Domain:
 - a. Connect to the Multi-Domain Server.
 - b. From the list of Domains, select **Global**.
- 2. Create a Check Point Host object for the Dedicated SmartEvent Server R82.

- In the Check Point Host object > General Properties page > Management tab, select these Software Blades:
 - Logging & Status
 - SmartEvent Server
 - SmartEvent Correlation Unit
- 4. Initialize SIC with the dedicated SmartEvent Server R82 Server.
- 5. Click OK.
- 6. Publish the SmartConsole session.
- 7. Reassign the Global Policy for the Domains that use SmartEvent.

For new Domains, create a new global assignment.

- 8. For each Domain Management Server that uses SmartEvent:.
 - a. Open SmartConsole.
 - b. Click Menu > Policy > Install Database > select all objects > click Install.
 - c. Wait until the Domain Management Server synchronizes and loads SmartEvent process.

Connecting an R82 SmartEvent Server and SmartEvent Correlation Unit to a specific Domain on an R82 Multi-Domain Server

- 1. Connect with SmartConsole to the specific Domain:
 - a. Connect to the Multi-Domain Server.
 - b. From the list of Domains, select the applicable .specific Domain.
- 2. Create a Check Point Host object for the Dedicated SmartEvent Server R82.
- In the Check Point Host object > General Properties page > Management tab, select these Software Blades:
 - Logging & Status
 - SmartEvent Server
 - SmartEvent Correlation Unit
- 4. Initialize SIC with the dedicated SmartEvent Server R82 Server.
- 5. Click OK.
- 6. Publish the SmartConsole session.
- 7. Click Menu > Policy > Install Database > select all objects > click Install.

8. Wait until the Domain Management Server synchronizes and loads SmartEvent process.

See also Advanced Configuration for a dedicated SmartEvent Server that is also a Correlation Unit in *"Connecting an R82 SmartEvent to an R82 Security Management Server" on page 53.*

Note - For Security Gateways R77.30 and lower: activate the Firewall session for the network activity report in *"Exporting Views and Reports" on page 65*.

Configuring SmartEvent to use a Non-Standard LEA Port

You can get logs from and send logs to a third-party Log Server. The Check Point Log Server and the third party Log Server use the LEA (Log Export API) protocol to read logs. By default, the Check Point Log Server uses port 18184 for this connection. If you configure the Log Server to use a different LEA port, you must manually configure the new port on the SmartEvent Server and on the SmartEvent Correlation Unit.

Note - This procedure is not relevant if you use "Log Exporter" on page 225

To change the default LEA port:

- 1. Open \$INDEXERDIR/log indexer custom settings.conf in a text editor.
- 2. Add this line to the file:

:lea_port (<new_port_number>)

- 3. Save the changes in the file and exit the editor.
- 4. In the SmartEvent client, configure the new port on the Correlation Unit.
- 5. In **Policy tab > Correlation Units**, configure the Correlation Unit to read logs from the local Log Server (on the SmartEvent Server).
- 6. Configure the new port on the SmartEvent Server
 - a. In **Policy tab > Network Objects**, double-click the SmartEvent Server object.
 - b. Change the LEA port No parameter to <new_port_number>.
- 7. Install the Event Policy on the Correlation Unit: Actions > Install Event Policy
- 8. On the SmartEvent Server
 - a. Run: cpstop
 - b. Open \$FWDIR/conf/fwopsec.conf in a text editor.
 - c. Change these parameters:

```
lea_server auth_port <new_port_number>
lea_server port 0
```

- d. Save the changes in the file and exit the editor.
- e. Run: cpstart

Configuring SmartEvent to read External Logs

To configure SmartEvent to read logs from an *externally-managed Log Server* or an *external Security Management Server*, see <u>sk35288</u>.

An *externally managed Log Server* is managed by a different Security Management Server than the one that manages the SmartEvent Server. An *external Security Management Server* is not the one that manages the SmartEvent Server.

Deploying a Domain Dedicated Log Server

Introduction

In a Multi-Domain Security Management environment, the Security Gateways send logs to the Domain Management Server and dedicated Domain Log Servers.

The Multi-Domain Server unifies logs, and they can be stored on the Multi-Domain Server or on a dedicated Multi-Domain Log Server.

Starting in R81, Multi-Domain Server supports a dedicated Log Server (installed on a separate computer) for a Domain.

You can configure a Domain Dedicated Log Server to receive logs only from a specified Domain, and no other Domains can access these logs.

This allows you to locate the dedicated Log Server in a separate network from the Multi-Domain Security Management environment to comply with special regulatory requirements.

Logs reported to the Domain Dedicated Log Server can be viewed from any SmartConsole that has permissions for this Domain.

The Domain Dedicated Log Server communicates directly only with the associated Domain Server. No other Domain can access its log data.

Note - Connecting with SmartConsole to the Domain Dedicated Log Server to see Security Policies is not supported.

Procedure for an R82 Multi-Domain Environment

1. Install an R82 Multi-Domain Server.

See the <u>R82 Installation and Upgrade Guide</u> > Chapter "Installing a Multi-Domain Server".

2. Install a regular dedicated R82 Log Server.

See the <u>R82 Installation and Upgrade Guide</u> > Chapter "Installing a Dedicated Log Server or SmartEvent Server".

3. Connect with SmartConsole to the specific Domain.

See the R82 Multi-Domain Security Management Administration Guide.

4. Add a regular Log Server object for the dedicated R82 Log Server you installed in Step 2.

Limitation - An administrator who is connected to a Domain Dedicated Log Server in the assigned Domain cannot see the Domain's data in Views, Reports, and Correlated Events that are based on events from the Global SmartEvent Server.

Requirement post upgrade to R82:

For any environment, which uses SmartEvent Server or a Domain Dedicated Log Server, this is a required step to complete post upgrade to R82 from any source version:

After you upgrade the SmartEvent Server or Domain Dedicated Log Server, run this command in the Expert mode on each Multi-Domain Security Management Server:

```
$MDS_FWDIR/scripts/cpm.sh -tm -op reset -d all -sd
```

Procedure for an R77.x Multi-Domain Environment

Upgrade with CPUSE

1. Upgrade all servers from R77.x to R80.20 (or R80.30 or R80.40).

This applies to all Multi-Domain Servers, Multi-Domain Log Servers, Domain Dedicated Log Servers, and SmartEvent Servers.

a. Follow the instructions in the R80.40 Installation and Upgrade Guide.

Important - Stop after the CPUSE **Verifier** shows the upgrade / installation is allowed.

For Multi-Domain Servers:

See the chapter "*Upgrade of Multi-Domain Servers and Multi-Domain Log Servers*" > select the applicable section to upgrade "*from R80.10 and lower*" > select the applicable section to upgrade "*with CPUSE*".

• For Log Servers:

See the chapter "Upgrade of Security Management Servers and Log Servers" > section "Upgrading a Dedicated Log Server from R80.10 and lower" > select the applicable section to upgrade "with CPUSE".

For SmartEvent Servers:

See the chapter "Upgrade of Security Management Servers and Log Servers" > section "Upgrading a Dedicated SmartEvent Server from R80.10 and lower" > select the applicable section to upgrade "with CPUSE".

b. Fix all the errors, except the one specified for Log Servers on a Domain Management Server:

```
Log Servers on the Domain Management Server level are not yet supported in R80.x
```

- c. On each Multi-Domain Security Management Server, modify the Pre-Upgrade Verifier to treat the upgrade errors as warnings:
 - i. Connect to the command line on the Multi-Domain Server.
 - ii. Log in to the Expert mode.
 - iii. Enter these commands as they appear below (after each command, press the Enter key):

```
cp -v $CPDIR/tmp/.CPprofile.sh{, BKP}
cat >> $CPDIR/tmp/.CPprofile.sh << EOF</pre>
> export PUV ERRORS AS WARNINGS=1
> EOF
```

d. Restart the CPUSE daemon:

DAClient stop ; DAClient start

- e. Follow the instructions in the R80.40 Installation and Upgrade Guide to upgrade all the servers "with CPUSE".
- 2. Upgrade all Multi-Domain Servers to R82.

See the *R82 Installation and Upgrade Guide* > chapter "*Upgrade of Multi-Domain*" Servers and Multi-Domain Log Servers" > select the applicable section to upgrade "from R80.20 and higher" > select the applicable section to upgrade "with CPUSE".

3. On each Multi-Domain Security Management Server, run this script in the Expert mode:

```
$MDS FWDIR/scripts/configureCrlDp.sh
```

4. Reboot each Multi-Domain Security Management Server:



5. Upgrade all Log Servers and SmartEvent Servers to R82.

See the R82 Installation and Upgrade Guide > chapter "Upgrade of Security" Management Servers and Log Servers" > section "Upgrading a Security Management Servers or Log Server from R80.20 and higher" > section "Upgrading a Security" Management Server or Log Server from R80.20 and higher with CPUSE".



Note - To install an R82 Log Server or an R82 SmartEvent Server, see the chapter "Installing a Dedicated Log Server or SmartEvent Server".

6. On each Multi-Domain Security Management Server, run this script in the Expert mode:

```
$MDS FWDIR/scripts/cpm.sh -tm -op reset -d all -sd
```

7. Reboot all the Domain Dedicated Log Servers and the SmartEvent Servers:

reboot

Advanced Upgrade

1. Upgrade all servers from R77.x to R80.20 (or R80.30 or R80.40).

This applies to all Multi-Domain Servers, Multi-Domain Log Servers, Domain Dedicated Log Servers, and SmartEvent Servers.

- a. Run the Pre-Upgrade Verifier, as detailed in the <u>*R80.40 Installation and Upgrade Guide.*</u>
 - For Multi-Domain Servers:

See the chapter "Upgrade of Multi-Domain Servers and Multi-Domain Log Servers" > select the applicable section to upgrade "from R80.10 and lower" > select the applicable section to upgrade "with Advanced Upgrade".

For Log Servers:

See the chapter "Upgrade of Security Management Servers and Log Servers" > section "Upgrading a Dedicated Log Server from R80.10 and lower" > select the applicable section to upgrade "with Advanced Upgrade".

For SmartEvent Servers:

See the chapter "Upgrade of Security Management Servers and Log Servers" > section "Upgrading a Dedicated SmartEvent Server from R80.10 and lower" > select the applicable section to upgrade "with Advanced Upgrade".

b. Fix all the errors, except the one specified for Log Servers on a Domain Management Server:

```
Log Servers on Domain Management Server level are not yet supported in R80.x
```

c. In your active shell window, run this command in the Expert mode:

```
export PUV ERRORS AS WARNINGS=1
```

- d. Follow the instructions in the *R80.40 Installation and Upgrade Guide* to upgrade all the servers "with Advanced Upgrade".
- 2. Upgrade all Multi-Domain Servers to R82.

See the *R82 Installation and Upgrade Guide* > chapter "*Upgrade of Multi-Domain* Servers and Multi-Domain Log Servers" > select the applicable section to upgrade "from R80.10 and lower" > select the applicable section to upgrade "with Advanced Upgrade".

3. On each Multi-Domain Security Management Server, run this script in the Expert mode:

```
$MDS FWDIR/scripts/configureCrlDp.sh
```

4. Reboot each Multi-Domain Security Management Server:



5. Upgrade all Log Servers and SmartEvent Servers to R82.

See the R82 Installation and Upgrade Guide > chapter "Upgrade of Security" Management Servers and Log Servers" > section "Upgrading a Security Management Servers or Log Server from R80.20 and higher" > section "Upgrading a Security Management Server or Log Server from R80.20 and higher with Advanced Upgrade".



Note - To install an R82 Log Server or an R82 SmartEvent Server, see the chapter "Installing a Dedicated Log Server or SmartEvent Server".

6. On each Multi-Domain Security Management Server, run this script in the Expert mode:

\$MDS FWDIR/scripts/cpm.sh -tm -op reset -d all -sd

7. Reboot all the Domain Dedicated Log Servers and SmartEvent Servers:

reboot

Administrator Permission Profiles

You can give an administrator permissions for:

- Monitoring and Logging
- Events and Reports

To define an administrator with these permissions:

- 1. Define an administrator or an administrator group.
- 2. Define a Permission Profile with the required permissions in SmartConsole (Manage & Settings > Permission Profiles).
- 3. Assign that profile to the administrator or to the administrator group.

Configuring Permissions for Monitoring, Logging, Events, and Reports

In the **Profile** object, select the features and the Read or Write administrator permissions for them.

Monitoring and Logging Features

These are *some* of the available features:

- Monitoring
- Management Logs
- Track Logs
- Application and URL Filtering Logs

Events and Reports Features

These are the permissions for SmartEvent:

- SmartEvent
 - Events views in SmartConsole > Logs & Events
 - Policy -SmartEvent Policy and Settings on SmartEvent GUI.
 - Reports in SmartConsole > Logs & Events
- SmartEvent Application & URL Filtering reports only

Multi-Domain Security Management

In a Multi-Domain Security Management, each Event and Report is related to a Domain. Administrators can see events for Domains according to their permissions. A Multi-Domain Security Management Policy administrator can be:

- Locally defined administrator on the SmartEvent Server.
- Multi-Domain Server Super User defined on the Multi-Domain Server.
- An administrator with permissions on all Domains. Select the Domains in SmartEvent, in Policy > General Settings > Objects > Domains. This type of administrator can install a Policy, and can see events from multiple Domains.

SmartEvent Reports-Only Permission Profile

You can define a special permission profile for administrators that only see and generate SmartEvent reports. With this permission profile, Administrators can open SmartConsole, but in the **Logs & Events** view can see only **Reports**. They cannot access other security information in SmartEvent. You can configure this permissions profile to apply to the Application & URL Filtering blade only, or apply to all blades.

To create a SmartEvent report-only permissions profile:

- 1. In SmartConsole, click Manage & Settings > Permissions Profiles.
- 2. In the **Permission Profiles** page, select a permission profile, or click the **New** button and create a permission profile.
- 3. Select Customized.
- 4. On the Events and Reports page, select SmartEvent Reports.
- 5. Clear all other options.
- 6. On the Access Control, Threat Prevention, and Others pages, clear all options.
- 7. On the Monitoring and Logging page, select all features, with Write permissions.
- 8. Click OK.

The profile shows in the **Permission Profiles** page.

- 9. Assign the SmartEvent Reports Only permissions profile to administrators.
- 10. Publish the SmartConsole session.
- 11. Install the policy.

Importing Offline Log Files

The administrator can examine logs from a previously generated log file. This makes it possible to review security threats and pattern anomalies that occurred in the past, before SmartEvent was installed. You can investigate threats such as unauthorized scans targeting vulnerable hosts, unauthorized legions, denial of service attacks, network anomalies, and other host-based activity.

The administrator can review logs from a specific timeframe in the past and focus on deploying resources on threats that have been active but may have been missed (for example, new events which may have been dynamically updated can now be processed over the previous period).

Importing Log Files from SmartEvent Servers

By default, you can import offline logs from the last 1 day. To import more days of logs, change the log indexing settings.

To change log indexing settings:

Note - Do this to make it possible to import logs that are older than 1 day before the SmartEvent Server was installed.

- 1. Run: # evstop
- 2. Run: \$INDEXERDIR/log_indexer -days_to_index <days> -workingDir \$INDEXERDIR/

< days > is the last number of days of logs to be indexed by the SmartEvent Server. For example, to import and index logs from the last 30 days of logs, give a value of 30.

Note - To decrease the performance effect while you index the offline logs, import only the necessary number of days of logs.

- 3. In the Logs > Storage page of the SmartEvent Server, Make sure that Keep indexed logs for... is not selected, or is selected with an equal or larger number of days than configured in days_to_index.
- 4. Run: # evstart

To allow the SmartEvent Server to index offline log files:

- 1. Copy the log files and related pointer files <log file name>.log* to \$FWDIR/log. Copy the files to the Log Server that sends logs to the SmartEvent Server.
- 2. Optional: Do an Offline Work for Correlated Events procedure for each log file. This procedure is done to run the log files through the Correlation Unit for correlation analysis

according to the Event Policy (defined in SmartEvent GUI client).

To run SmartEvent offline jobs for multiple log files, see <u>sk98894</u>.

Offline Work for Correlated Events

To detect suspicious logging activity (suspicious according to the Event Policy on the **SmartEvent GUI > Policy** tab), run the offline log file through the Correlation Unit.

The settings to generate of Offline logs are in: **SmartEvent GUI client > Policy tab > General Settings > Initial Settings > Offline Jobs**, connected to the Security Management Servers or Multi-Domain Server.

The settings are:

- Add Configure an Offline Log File procedure.
 - Name Lets you recognize the specified Offline Line log file for future processing.
 - Comment A description of the Offline Job.
 - Offline Job Parameters:

SmartEvent Correlation Unit: The machine that reads and processes the Offline Logs.

Log Server: The machine that contains the Offline Log files. SmartEvent makes a query to this Log Server to find out which log files are available.

Log File - A list of available log files found on the selected Log Server. These log files are processed by the SmartEvent Correlation Unit. In this window, select the log file from which to retrieve historical information.

- Edit Change the parameters of an Offline Log File procedure.
- Remove Delete an Offline Log File procedure. After you start an Offline Log File procedure you cannot remove it.
- Start Run the Offline Log File procedure.
- Stop Stop the Offline Log Files procedure. It does not delete the full procedure, but stops the procedure at the specified point.

Importing Syslog Messages

Many third-party devices use the *syslog* format for logging. The Log Server reformats the raw data to the Check Point log format to process third-party *syslog* messages.

The Log Server uses a syslog parser to convert syslog messages to the Check Point log format.

To import syslog messages, define your own syslog parser and install it on the Log Server.

SmartEvent can take the reformatted logs and convert them into security events.

Generating a Syslog Parser and Importing syslog Messages

To import syslog messages from products and vendors that are not supported out-of-the-box, see $\frac{sk55020}{2}$. This shows you how to:

- 1. Import some sample syslog messages to the Log Parsing Editor.
- 2. Define the mapping between syslog fields and the Check Point log fields.
- 3. Install the syslog parser on the Log Server.

After you imported the syslog messages to the Log Server, you can see them in SmartConsole, in the Logs & Events > Logs tab.

Note - Make sure that Access Control rules allow ELA traffic between the Syslog computer and the Log Server.

Configuring SmartEvent to Read Imported Syslog Messages

After you imported the syslog messages to the Log Server, you can forward them to SmartEvent Server (and other OPSEC LEA clients), as other Check Point logs. SmartEvent converts the syslog messages into security events.

To configure the SmartEvent Server to read logs from this Log Server:

- 1. Configure SmartEvent to read logs from the Log Server.
- In SmartEvent or in the SmartConsole event views, make a query to filter by the Product Name field. This field uniquely identifies the events that are created from the syslog messages.

Connecting an R82 SmartEvent to an R82 Security Management Server

This procedure explains how to configure a dedicated server for these components:

SmartEvent Server and SmartEvent Correlation Unit

Note - For information on how to install a dedicated SmartEvent Server, see the <u>*R82</u> <u><i>Installation and Upgrade Guide*</u>.</u>

To connect an R82 SmartEvent Server and SmartEvent Correlation Unit to an R82 Security Management Server:

- 1. In SmartConsole, create a new **Check Point Host** object for the dedicated SmartEvent Server.
- 2. In the **Version** field, select R82.
- 3. Create the SIC trust with the dedicated SmartEvent Server.
- 4. On the Management tab, enable these Software Blades:
 - Logging & Status
 - SmartEvent Server
 - SmartEvent Correlation Unit
- 5. On a dedicated SmartEvent Server that is not a Log Server (recommended):

In the Logs page, make sure that Enable Log Indexing is not selected.

This ensures that Firewall connections (which are not relevant for views and reports) are not indexed.

- 6. Click OK.
- 7. Publish the SmartConsole session.
- 8. Click Menu > Install Database > select all objects > click Install.

Note - For Security Gateways R77.30 and lower: activate the Firewall session for the network activity report. See *"Exporting Views and Reports" on page 65*.

Advanced Configuration for a dedicated SmartEvent Server that is also a Correlation Unit

- 1. Open the SmartEvent GUI:
 - a. In SmartConsole > Logs & Events, click + to open a catalog (new tab).
 - b. Click SmartEvent Settings & Policy.

- 2. In **Policy tab > Correlation Units**, define a Correlation Unit object.
- 3. Select the production Log Servers and local Log Server on the SmartEvent Server to read logs from.
- 4. In **Policy tab > Internal Network**, define the internal Network.
- 5. Click Save.
- 6. Install the Event Policy on the Correlation Unit:

SmartEvent menu > Actions > Install Event Policy.

Views and Reports

You can create rich and customizable views and reports for log and event monitoring.

The views present queries in a graphical way which can be used for analytical and presentation purposes.

Use these:

- SmartConsole > From the left navigation panel, click Logs & Events > Logs.
- SmartView Web Application for generating and editing views in a browser:

```
https://<Server IP Address>/smartview/
```

Where < Server IP Address> is the IP address of the Security Management Server or SmartEvent Server.

Enabling Views and Reports

To enable SmartEvent views and reports, you must install and configure a SmartEvent Server. See "*Deploying SmartEvent*" on page 35.

Catalog of Views and Reports

In the Logs & Events view, click the (+) tab to open a catalog of all views and reports, predefined and customized. Click a view or report to open it. You can create a new view or report, or export them to PDF. To see other actions, open the Actions menu.

	Favorites		v 📲 Export to PDF 🗮 Actions - Search	8)	9 = -
		Name			(5)
Views			Category Last Viewed	Created by Creation Date Shared	Preview (Today)
Reports	*	Access Control	Access Control	Check Point	Ang Tenire Safe
	*	Active Users	Access Control	Check Point	40.7MB foot tants
(3)	*	Application Categories	Access Control	Check Point	
	*	Applications and Sites	Access Control	Check Point	1 M
Scheduled 6	*	Audit Overview	General	Check Point	A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A
	*	Content Awareness	Access Control	Check Point	Total Data Data <thdata< th=""> Data Data <th< td=""></th<></thdata<>
	*	🞯 Cyber Attack View - Endpoint	Threat Prevention	Check Point	A glass glasses glasses glasses a glasse
\bigcirc	*	😰 Cyber Attack View - Gateway	Threat Prevention	Check Point	No. NAME NO. NAME NO.
	*	🎯 Cyber Attack View - Mobile	Threat Prevention	Check Point	No. NW.F No. WICH- N. NW.R N. N. NW.CH-
	*	Plata Loss Prevention (DLP)	Access Control	Check Point	A. WHAT. Wa. WHAT. M. BLER. Status Status M. BLER. WHAT. WHAT.
	*	🐖 General Overview	General	Check Point	la de de se altre la de la de
	*	F High Bandwidth Applications	Access Control	Check Point	4400 300 300 300 300 300 300 300 300 300
	*	📲 High Risk Applications and Sites	Access Control	Check Point	
	*	1 Important Attacks	Threat Prevention	Check Point	10/2 4 4 4 5 4 5 4 5 4 5 4 5 4 5 4 5 4 5 4
	*	👩 Infected Hosts	Threat Prevention	Check Point	
	*	Infinity Threat Prevention Dashboard	Threat Prevention	Check Point	
	*	👱 License Status	General	Check Point	Access Control Overview of network access, including allowed and blocked connections, services, and users.
	*	MITRE ATT&CK	Threat Prevention	Check Point	Created by: Check Point
	*	MTA Live Monitoring	General	Check Point	Cleared by. Check form
	*	MTA Overview	General	Check Point	
	*	MTA Troubleshooting	General	Check Point	
	*	Remote Access	Access Control	Check Point	
	*	👰 Security Checkup Summary	General	Check Point	
	*	Security Dashboard	General	Check Point	
	*	Security Incidents	Threat Prevention	Check Point	
	*	1 Threat Prevention	Threat Prevention	Check Point	

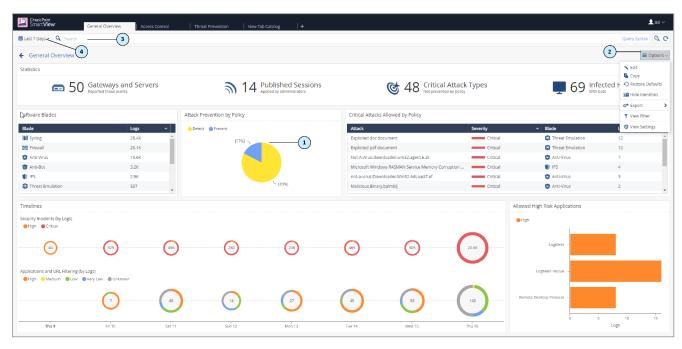
Item	Description
1	Open Log View - See and search through the logs from all Log Servers. In SmartConsole only, you can also search the logs from a specific Log Server. Open Audit Logs View - See and search records of actions done by SmartConsole administrators. These views come from the Log Servers. All other Views/Reports (except the Compliance View) come from the SmartEvent Server.
2	 Views -The list of predefined and customized views. A view is an interactive dashboard made up of widgets. The view tells administrators and other stakeholders about security and network events. Each widget is the output of a query. Widgets can show the information as a chart, table, or some other format. To find out more about the events, double-click a widget to drill down to a more specific view or raw log files. Compliance View -Optimize your security settings and ensure compliance with regulatory requirements.

Item	Description
3	Reports -The list of predefined and customized reports. A report consists of multiple views. There are several predefined reports, and you can create new reports. A report gives more details because it consists of multiple views. Reports can be customized, filtered, generated and scheduled. You cannot drill down into a report.
4	Favorites - Use this view to collect the views and reports you use the most. Recent - Shows the most recently opened report or view.
5	Switch to Table View or Thumbnails View -The Table view is the default for Views and Reports. The Thumbnails view is the default for the Favorites , Recent, and Logs.
6	Scheduled Tasks - See and edit scheduled tasks.
7	Archive - Download the exported views and reports.
8	Catalog (New Tab) - Open a Catalog (new tab) and select Log View, Audit View, Views, or Reports. In the Logs & Events view, click the (+) tab to open a catalog of all views and reports, predefined and customized. To open a view, double-click the view or select the applicable view and click Open from the action bar.

Views

Views shows an interactive dashboard made up of widgets. Each widget is the output of a query. A **Widget** pane can show information in different formats, for example, a chart or a table.

SmartView and SmartEvent come with several predefined views. You can create new views that match your needs, or you can customize an existing view.



Item	Description
1	Widget - The output of a query. A Widget can show information in different formats, for example, a chart or a table. To find out more about the events, you can double-click most widgets to drill down to a more specific view or raw log files.
2	Options - Customize the view, restore defaults, Hide Identities, copy the view, export the view.
3	Query search bar - Define custom queries using the GUI tools, or manually entering query criteria. Shows the query definition for the most recent query. Click Query Syntax to open the online Help for more information.
4	Time Period - Specify the time periods for the view.

Reports

A report consists of multiple views and a cover page. There are several predefined reports, and you can create new reports. A report gives more details than a view. Reports can be customized, filtered, generated and scheduled. You cannot drill down into a report.

Note - For Security Gateways R77.30 and lower, the ability to generate reports on Firewall and VPN activity is integrated into SmartConsole. To enable this functionality, activate the Firewall session event on the SmartEvent **Policy** tab. Select and enable **Consolidated Sessions** > **Firewall Session**. For more information, see *"Connecting an R82 SmartEvent to an R82 Security Management Server" on page 53*.

Automatic View and Report Updates

SmartEvent automatically downloads new predefined views and reports, and downloads updates to existing predefined ones. To allow this, make sure the management server has internet connectivity to the <u>Check Point Support Center</u>.

Opening a View or Report

Use the predefined graphical views and reports for the most frequently seen security issues. You can also customize the views and reports.

To open a view or report:

- 1. In SmartConsole, open the Logs & Events view.
- 2. Click the + icon to open a new catalog.
- 3. Click Views or Reports.
- 4. Select a view or a report, and click **Open**. You can also double click to open it.
- 5. Define the required timeframe, and filter in the search bar.
- 6. Click Enter.

MITRE ATT&CK in SmartView

MITRE ATT&CK is a new methodology to investigate security incidents. To use this feature, you must enable SmartEvent and one of these blades: Threat Emulation, IPS or Anti-Bot.

In SmartView, you can use the MITRE ATT&CK view to:

- Quickly locate the tactics (malicious files) and techniques the attackers use against your network.
- Use a heat map to locate the top techniques, drill down to understand where damage occurred from malicious files, and follow the MITRE ATT&CK mitigation recommendations.
- Extract immediate action items based on the mitigation flow

To access the MITRE ATT&CK view:

1. Open a new catalog in Views and select the MITRE ATT&CK view.

A heat map table opens. The darker the color, the higher the number of attack attempts.

Check Point' Smart View	General Overview	Logs	Mitre Attack	+							👤 aa 🤟
🛱 Last 7 Days 🔹 🔍 Sea											Query Syntax
Mitre Attack											Options
Initial Access 0	Execution 24	Persistence 24	Privilege Escalation 18	Defense Evasion 24	Credential Access 24	Discovery 24	Lateral Movement 6	Collection 24	Exfiltration 18	Command and Control 0	Impact 12
Drive-by Compromise (0)	AppleScript (0)	.bash_profile and .bashrc	Access Token	Access Token	Account Manipulation (0)	Account Discovery (0)	AppleScript (0)	Audio Capture (0)	Automated Exfiltration (0)	Commonly Used Port (0)	Account Access Removal
Exploit Public-Facing	CMSTP (0)	(0)	Manipulation (0)	Manipulation (0)	Bash History (0)		Application Deployment	Automated Collection (0)	Data Compressed (0)	Communication Through	(0)
Application (0)		Accessibility Features (0)	Accessibility Features (0)	Binary Padding (0)	Brute Force (0)	Discovery (18)	Software (0)	Clipboard Data (12)	Data Encrypted (18)	Removable Media (0)	Data Destruction (0)
External Remote Services (0)		Account Manipulation (0)	AppCert DLLs (0)	BITS Jobs (0)	Credential Dumping (0)	Browser Bookmark Discovery (18)	Component Object Model and Distributed COM (0)	Data from Information	Data Transfer Size Limits	Connection Proxy (0)	
Hardware Additions (0)	Compiled HTML File (12)	AppCert DLLs (0)	AppInit DLLs (0)		Credentials from Web	Domain Trust Discovery	Exploitation of Remote	Repositories (0)	(0)	Custom Command and Control Protocol (0)	Defacement (0)
	Component Object Model	AppInit DLLs (0)	Application Shimming (0)			(0)	Services (0)	Data from Local System	Exfiltration Over		
Replication Through Removable Media (0)	and Distributed COM (0)	Application Shimming (0)		Clear Command History (0)		File and Directory	Internal Spearphishing (0)	(18)	Alternative Protocol (0)	Custom Cryptographic Protocol (0)	Disk Content Wipe (0)
Spearphishing	Control Panel Items (0)	Authentication Package	Control (6)	CMSTP (0)		Discovery (0)	Logon Scripts (0)	Data from Network Shared Drive (0)	Exfiltration Over Command and Control	Data Encoding (0)	Disk Structure Wipe (0)
Attachment (0)	Dynamic Data Exchange (0)	(0)	DLL Search Order Hilacking (0)	Code Signing (0)	Exploitation for	Network Service Scanning	Pass the Hash (0)	Data from Removable	Channel (0)	Data Obfuscation (0)	Endpoint Denial of Service (0)
Spearphishing Link (0)	Execution through API	BITS Jobs (0)	Dylib Hijacking (0)	Compile After Delivery (0)	Credential Access (0)	(0)	Pass the Ticket (0)	Media (0)	Exfiltration Over Other	Domain Fronting (0)	Firmware Corruption (0)
pearphishing via Service	(24)	Bootkit (0)	Elevated Execution with	Compiled HTML File (12)	Forced Authentication (0)	Network Share Discovery (0)	Remote Desktop Protocol	Data Staged (0)	Network Medium (0)	Domain Generation	Inhibit System Recovery
(0)	Execution through	Browser Extensions (0)	Prompt (0)			Network Sniffing (0)		Email Collection (12)	Exfiltration Over Physical Medium (0)	Algorithms (0)	
Supply Chain Compromise (0)	Module Load (0)		Emond (0)	Component Firmware (0)	Input Capture (18)	Password Policy	Remote File Copy (0)	Input Capture (18)	Scheduled Transfer (0)	Fallback Channels (0)	Network Denial of Servic
	Exploitation for Client	Association (18)	Exploitation for Privilege	Component Object Model Hijacking (0)	Input Prompt (0)	Discovery (0)	Remote Services (0)	Man in the Browser (0)	Scheduled transier (0)	Multi-hop Proxy (0)	(0)
Trusted Relationship (0)	Execution (0)	Component Firmware (0)	Escalation (0)	Connection Proxy (0)	Kerberoasting (0)	Peripheral Device	Replication Through	Screen Capture (0)		Multi-Stage Channels (0)	Resource Hijacking (0)
Valid Accounts (0)	Graphical User Interface (0)	Component Object Model Hilacking (0)	Extra Window Memory	Control Panel Items (0)	Keychain (0)	Discovery (0)	Removable Media (0)	Video Capture (0)		Multihand	Runtime Data
	InstallUtil (0)	Create Account (0)	Injection (0)	DCShadow (0)	LLMNR/NBT-NS Poisoning	Permission Groups	Shared Webroot (0)			Communication (0)	Manipulation (0)
	Launchctl (0)	DLL Search Order	File System Permissions Weakness (0)	Deobfuscate/Decode	and Relay (0)	Discovery (0)	SSH Hijacking (0)			Multilayer Encryption (0)	Service Stop (0)
	Local Job Scheduling (0)	Hijacking (0)	Hooking (12)	Files or Information (0)	Network Sniffing (0)	Process Discovery (0)	Taint Shared Content (0)			Port Knocking (0)	Stored Data Manipulation (0)
	LSASS Driver (0)	Dylib Hijacking (0)	Image File Execution	Disabling Security Tools	Password Filter DLL (0)	Query Registry (0)	Third-party Software (0)			Remote Access Tools (0)	System Shutdown/Reboo
	Mshta (0)	Emond (0)	Options Injection (0)	(6)	Private Keys (0)		Windows Admin Shares			Remote File Copy (0)	(0)
		External Remote Services	Launch Daemon (0)	DLL Search Order	Securityd Memory (0)	Security Software	(0)			Standard Application	Transmitted Data
	PowerShell (0)	(0)	New Service (6)	Hijacking (0)	Steal Web Session Cookie	Discovery (12)	Windows Remote			Layer Protocol (0)	Manipulation (0)
	Regsvcs/Regasm (0)			DLL Side-Loading (0)	m		Management (0)				

- 2. Double click on a technique that is the darkest shade of red. You can now drill down further.
- 3. Review the different malicious emails/file downloads and click one of the logs.

Card			□ ×
😯 Detect 👔 Threat Emulation	O Jan 12, 2020 3:22:46 PM		
DETAILS			
Log Info	~	Policy	······ ^ ^
Origin:	➡ cp_mgmt	Action:	😌 Detect
Time:	🕥 Jan 12, 2020 3:22:46 PM	Log Server IP:	172.23.84.170
Blade:	😵 Threat Emulation		
Product Family:	💿 Threat	Traffic	~
Туре:	E Log	Source:	Iocalhost (127.0.0.1)
		Destination:	Iocalhost (127.0.0.1)
Protection Details	~	Service:	TCP/30580
C Severity:	Critical	Source Port:	4
Confidence Level:	High	Mitre Attack	
(Malware Action:	A process created a hidden window	MILLE ALLOCK	
	Allocates read-write-execute memory (usually to unpack itself)	Execution:	Compiled HTML File
c	Appends a known multi-family ransomware file extension to files that have been encrypted		Execution through API Service Execution
	AutoITCrypter is a packer written in Autoit scripting language.	Persistence:	Change Default File Association
c	Changes read-write memory protection to read-execute (probably to avoid detection when setting all RWX flags at the same time)		Hooking Registry Run Keys / Startup Folder
e e	Checks amount of memory in system, this can be used to detect virtual machines that have a low amount of memory available	Privilege Escalation:	Bypass User Account Control
C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C	Checks for the Locally Unique Identifier on the system for a suspicious privilege	Defense Evasion:	Hooking Burpase Liser Account Control
	Checks if process is being debugged by a debugger	Derense Evasion:	Bypass User Account Control Compiled HTML File
	Collects information to fingerprint the system (MachineGuid,		Execution Guardrails
	DigitalProductId, SystemBiosDate)		File Deletion
<u>c</u>	Command line console output was observed		Software Packing
C	Creates (office) documents on the filesystem		Virtualization / Sandbox Evasion

- 4. Inside the log, you can review the entire list of MITRE ATT&CK tactics and techniques used by the attacker for the specific attack.
- 5. When locating the technique (for example, **Service Execution** under **Execution**) go to <u>https://attack.mitre.org/</u>

C attack.mi		eck 📕 AnalystMind 📕 Wiki	🛄 Checkpoint 📕 Zo	om 👌 Citrix Gateway	. Design			service) 🗅 💻 D
Re att&	CK.			м	atrices Tactics	 Techniques 	Mitigations -	Groups Soft	ware Resources	 Blog I[™] Contr 	ibute Searc
				ATT&C	K Matrix f	or Enterpri	se				
Initial Access	Execution	Persistence	Privilege Escalation	Defense Evasion	Credential Access	Discovery	Lateral Movement	Collection	Command and Control	Exfiltration	Impact
Drive-by Compromise	AppleScript	.bash_profile and .bashrc	Access Token Manipulation	Access Token Manipulation	Account Manipulation	Account Discovery	AppleScript	Audio Capture	Commonly Used Port	Automated Exfiltration	Account Access Removal
Exploit Public-Facing Application	CMSTP	Accessibility Features	Accessibility Features	Binary Padding	Bash History	Application Window Discovery	Application Deployment Software	Automated Collection	Communication Through Removable Media	Data Compressed	Data Destruction
External Remote Services	Command-Line Interface	Account Manipulation	AppCert DLLs	BITS Jobs	Brute Force	Browser Bookmark Discovery	Component Object Model and Distributed COM	Clipboard Data	Connection Proxy	Data Encrypted	Data Encrypted for Impact
Hardware Additions	Compiled HTML File	AppCert DLLs	AppInit DLLs	Bypass User Account Control	Credential Dumping	Domain Trust Discovery	Exploitation of Remote Services	Data from Information Repositories	Custom Command and Control Protocol	Data Transfer Size Limits	Defacement
Replication Through Removable Media	Component Object Model and Distributed COM	AppInit DLLs	Application Shimming	Clear Command History	Credentials from Web Browsers	File and Directory Discovery	Internal Spearphishing	Data from Local System	Custom Cryptographic Protocol	Exfiltration Over Alternative Protocol	Disk Content Wipe
Spearphishing Attachment	Control Panel Items	Application Shimming	Bypass User Account Control	CMSTP	Credentials in Files	Network Service Scanning	Logon Scripts	Data from Network Shared Drive	Data Encoding	Exfiltration Over Command and Control Channel	Disk Structure Wipe
Spearphishing Link	Dynamic Data Exchange	Authentication Package	DLL Search Order Hijacking	Code Signing	Credentials in Registry	Network Share Discovery	Pass the Hash	Data from Removable Media	Data Obfuscation	Exfiltration Over Other Network Medium	Endpoint Denial of Service
Spearphishing via Service	Execution through API	BITS Jobs	Dylib Hijacking	Compile After Delivery	Exploitation for Credential Access	Network Sniffing	Pass the Ticket	Data Staged	Domain Fronting	Exfiltration Over Physical Medium	Firmware Corruption
Supply Chain Compromise	Execution through Module Load	Bootkit	Elevated Execution with Prompt	Compiled HTML File	Forced Authentication	Password Policy Discovery	Remote Desktop Protocol	Email Collection	Domain Generation Algorithms	Scheduled Transfer	Inhibit System Recovery
Trusted Relationship	Exploitation for Client Execution	Browser Extensions	Emond	Component Firmware	Hooking	Peripheral Device Discovery	Remote File Copy	Input Capture	Fallback Channels		Network Denial of Service
Valid Accounts	Graphical User Interface	Change Default File Association	Exploitation for Privilege Escalation	Component Object Model Hijacking	Input Capture	Permission Groups Discovery	Remote Services	Man in the Browser	Multi-hop Proxy		Resource Hijacking
	InstallUtil	Component Firmware	Extra Window Memory Injection	Connection Proxy	Input Prompt	Process Discovery	Replication Through Removable Media	Screen Capture	Multi-Stage Channels		Runtime Data Manipulation
	Launchotl	Component Object Model Hijacking	File System Permissions Weakness	Control Panel Items	Kerberoasting	Query Registry	Shared Webroot	Video Capture	Multiband Communication		Service Stop
	Local Job Scheduling	Create Account	Hooking	DCShadow	Keychain	Remote System Discovery	SSH Hijacking		Multilayer Encryption		Stored Data Manipulation
	LSASS Driver	DLL Search Order Hijacking	Image File Execution Options Injection	Deobfuscate/Decode Files or Information	LLMNR/NBT-NS Poisoning and Relay	Security Software Discovery	Taint Shared Content		Port Knocking		System Shutdown/Reboot
	Mshta	Dylib Hijacking	Launch Daemon	Disabling Security Tools	Network Sniffing	Software Discovery	Third-party Software		Remote Access Tools		Transmitted Data Manipulation
	PowerShell	Emond	New Service	DLL Search Order Hijacking	Password Filter DLL	System Information Discovery	Windows Admin Shares		Remote File Copy		

Exporting Views and Reports

The **Export to PDF** and **Export to CSV** options save the current view or report as a PDF or CSV file, based on the defined filters and time frame.

To see your exported views and reports:

- 1. Add a new tab. Click +.
- 2. Go to **Tasks > Archive**.

Generating a Network Activity Report

Note - When you export a view or report to CSV, only tables are exported. You can download a zip folder which contains a separate CSV file for each table.

To export a view or report to PDF or CSV:

- 1. In SmartConsole, open the Logs & Events view.
- 2. Click the + tab to open a new tab.
- 3. Click Views or Reports.
- 4. Select a view or report.
- 5. Click **Export to PDF**.Optionally:
 - Configure the **Period and filter**.
 - To automatically send by email to specified recipients each time the view or report runs, configure the Send by email settings.See "Configuring Email Settings for Views and Reports" on page 75.

Alternatively, click Open and from inside the view or report click Options > Export to

PDF or Export to CSV.

	 Edit Copy Restore Defaults
	Hide Identities
🔎 Export to CSV	👉 Export 🔰 💙
🔎 Export to PDF	🍾 Report Filter
👉 Export Template	🔅 Report Settings

The **Network Activity** report shows important Firewall connections. For example, top sources, destinations, and services. To create this report, SmartEvent must first index the Firewall logs. Indexing is on by default in R80 and higher, in all environments except for Standalone.

To enable the Network Activity Report for Security Gateways R80.10 and higher:

In SmartConsole, in the Access Control Policy rule, add **per Session** to the **Track** settings. See "*Tracking Options*" on page 113.

To enable the Network Activity Report for Security Gateways R77.30 and lower:

- 1. In SmartConsole, open the Logs & Events view.
- 2. Click the (+) to open a new tab.
- 3. In the External Apps section, click SmartEvent Settings & Policy link.
- 4. In the SmartEvent GUI client > **Policy** tab, select and expand **Consolidated Sessions**.
- 5. Select Firewall Session.

Note - This configuration increases the number of events per day by about five times. To avoid a performance impact, make sure the hardware can handle the load.

Sharing Reports

You can share a report you created with your team, without export or import. If a regular admin shares a view or report, it is shared with all the admins on the domain. A super admin for the Multi-Domain Server can share with all users under all domains.

To share a report:

- 1. In SmartConsole, open Logs & Events and click + to open a new tab.
- 2. Click **Reports** and select a report.

MITRE ATT&CK in SmartView

3. Click Actions and select Share.

	💿 Open 🗦	🗧 New 🗸 🎝 Export to PD	F
Favorites	Name	Category	👉 Export Template
*	Access Control	Access Control	Import Template
*	Active Users	Access Control	Schedule PDF
*	Application Categories	Access Control	*
*	Applications and Sites	Access Control	Clone
*	udit Overview	General	
*	🖳 Cloud Cyber Data	General	Paste
*	🤟 Content Awareness	General	🔨 Rename
*	🎯 Cyber Attack View - Endpoint	Threat Prevention	× Delete
*	🎯 Cyber Attack View - Gateway	Threat Prevention	

4. Click **Yes** to approve sharing the report.

The report is now marked as shared.

The report owner can undo the action and unshare the report.

To unshare the report:

Click Actions and select Unshare.

	💿 Open	🔆 New 🗸 🎝 Export to PD	OF		
Favorites	Name	Category	🚰 Export Template	Created by	
*	Access Control	Access Control	Import Template	Check Point	
*	Active Users	Access Control	Schedule PDF	Check Point	
*	Application Categories	Access Control	-	Check Point	
*	Applications and Sites	Access Control	Clone	Check Point	
*	udit Overview	General		Check Point	
	🧕 Cloud Cyber Data	General	Paste	aa	
*	🤟 Content Awareness	General	🔨 Rename	Check Point	
*	🎯 Cyber Attack View - Endpoint	Threat Prevention	× Delete	Check Point	
*	🎯 Cyber Attack View - Gateway	Threat Prevention		Check Point	

Note - A Super User can take ownership of reports or views created by other administrators via the **take ownership** feature.

Permissions when an owner shares a view/report:

MITRE ATT&CK in SmartView

	Visible on Catalog	Can Edit	Can clone	Can Delete
Owner	+	+	+	+
Super User	+	-	+	-

Exporting and Importing Templates

You can export the view or report layout and widget definitions to a file. This is called a *template*. You can import the template from another server or from another administrator.

To export the view or report layout and widget definitions to a file, use the **Export Template** option

To download exported templates, click the link in the notification message. To view historical reports, views, and templates, go to **Tasks** > **Archive**.

To import the file from another server or from another administrator, use the **Import Template** option in the Catalog (new tab).

💿 Open 🛛 🔆	New 👻 📌 Expo	ort to PDF	E Actions -	
			👉 Export Template	
			🛃 Import Te	mplate
			Schedule	PDF
			Schedule	Excel
			Clone	
			Copy	
			🕞 Paste	
			🔨 Rename	
			imes Delete	

Scheduling a View or Report

To schedule a view or report, you need to define and edit it in SmartConsole.

To schedule a report:

- 1. In SmartConsole, open the Logs & Events view.
- 2. Click the + tab to open a new tab.
- 3. Click Views or Reports.
- 4. Select a view or a report.
- 5. Select Actions > Schedule PDF or Schedule CSV.

The **Schedule** page of the **Export** settings window opens.

- 6. Define the **recurrence pattern**.
- 7. Define the **Period and Filter**.
- 8. **Optional**: Configure email settings to get the scheduled view or report automatically. Click **Send by email**.

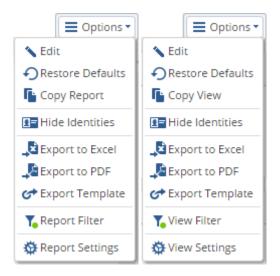
To edit your scheduled views and reports:

- 1. In SmartConsole, open the Logs & Events view.
- 2. Click the + tab to open a new tab.
- 3. Select Tasks > Scheduled.

Customizing a View or Report

To customize a view or report:

- 1. Select a view or a report and click **Open**.
- 2. Click **Options > Edit**.



- 3. In a report, you can edit the report or the current view in the report.
 - To add or remove, click the relevant icon in the edit toolbar (becomes available when in edit mode):



- To add a widget or arrange the "Widgets" on page 77 in the view, use Drag & Drop or expand..
- Define filters (see "Widgets" on page 77).

Note - If you change the timeframe, the data changes according to the start and stop times. The timeframe and search bar are not saved with the view or report definition. Define them as needed when generating the view or report. See *"Opening a View or Report" on page 62*.

View Settings

Views can be configured according to these options:

View Settings			×		
Name: * General Overview	^w (1)	T			
Split table across multiple pag	ges:	Critical Attacks Allowed	Critical Attacks Allowed by Po 👻		
No page limit	2				
 Set page limit to 	1	1			
 When this control has no data 	All	All			
O Remove the page	3				
 Show default message Show the following message 	ae.				
No General Overview	0-				
Use view as template:					
Filter each view by:	None	¥			
Sort values by:	Logs	* Descending			
Number of values (up to):	5				
		ОК	Cancel		

- 1. Enter a title.
- 2. To show more results, this option allows a table to spread across multiple pages when saved to PDF.

The **No page limit** option shows all the results for the selected table query, spread across as many pages as required.

- 3. Select what you want to display when this control has no data:
 - Remove the page
 - Show a default or custom message.
- 4. Select to use the view as a template and add filter and sort criteria.

Use the view as a basis for generating duplicate views with more granularity.

Use Case:

The **Active Users** predefined view shows all active users. You want to see a more granular view per user:

1. Open the Active Users view and click Options > View settings.

The View Settings window opens.

- 2. Select Use View as template.
- 3. For Filter each view by, select User.

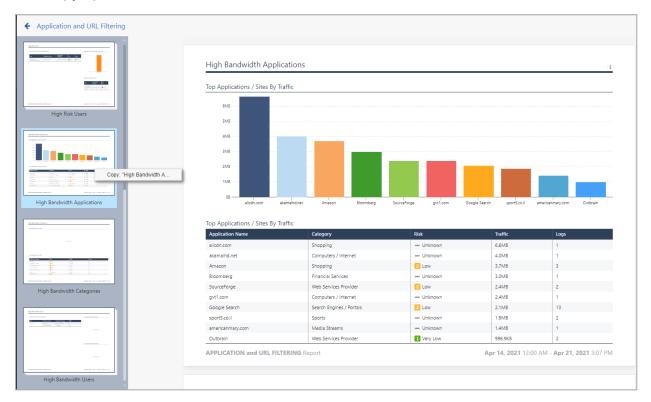
- 4. Select Number of values. For example, 5.
- 5. Click OK.
- 6. Go to **Options > Export > Export to PDF**.
- 7. The view is exported. Wait until a message shows the view was successfully exported.
- 8. Click Download.

The report shows all widgets in the view filtered according to each user.

Copying Views to Other Reports

To copy a view to another report:

- 1. Right-click the required view.
- 2. The copy option shows with the name of the view:



- 3. Select Copy: [view name]
- 4. Go to the report in which you want to past the view.
- 5. Go to Options and select Edit:

Mode			+ Add Page × Remove Page + Add Wie	dget 🗸 👈 Undo 🔿 Redo 😵 Discard 🔗 Done		≡ Opt	tion
	Best Practi	ces with Medium status				K Edit	
Andread Andrea	ID	Best Practice Blade	Security Best Practice	Recommendation		Copy Restore Defailed	ult
Parti Animaterial Statemental Networks and any analytic biological statements and any analytic biological statements and and any and the statement and any	VPN133	IPSec VPN	Check the Endpoint Connect 'Re-authenticat	The 'Re-authenticate user' settings for Endpoint Connect is defined in the Global Properties u		💵 Hide Identitie	es
Arabi Arabication and a second s	VPN125	IPSec VPN	Check that Secure Configuration Verification	Secure Configuration Verification in the Global Properties in the Remote Access settings must		👉 Export	
	URL139	URL Filtering	Check that Uncategorized Sites are being bl	The URL Filtering blade should have a policy that blocks (any kind of block) uncategorized sit	Branch_Office_Policy, ru	Te Report Filter	
Poor Security					Corporate_Policy	Y View Filter	
. our secondy	URL136	URL Filtering	Check the Website Categorization Mode in t	The Website Categorization Mode in the Engine Settings of the URL Filtering blade should be			
	URL112	URL Filtering	Check that sites categorized as P2P File Shar	The URL Filtering blade should have a policy that blocks sites categorized as P2P File Sharing	Branch_Office_Policy, ru	Report Settin	
					Corporate_Policy	View Settings	s
End Team End	TP103	Threat Prevention	Check the 'Low Confidence' setting in Threa	The 'Low Confidence' setting in the 'Activation Mode' must be set to 'Prevent', 'Ask' or 'Detec	Optimized	Medium	
State State <th< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>Strict</td><td>Medium</td><td></td></th<>					Strict	Medium	
Analysis of the second	TE115	Threat Emulation	Check the frequency of scheduled updates	The Threat Emulation engine should be updated at least every two hours.	ftm		
100 mg	TE109	Threat Emulation	Check the Emulation Connection Handling	The Emulation Connection Handling Mode should be set to 'Hold'. If 'Custom' is selected, bot	Sptimized	Medium	
Medium Security					Strict	Medium	
	IPS131	IPS	Check the IPS Protection: DNS - General Set	The IPS Protection: Sequence Verifier must have its 'Monitor DNS connections over' setting se	Default Inspection	Medium	
	IPS113	IPS	Check that each Gateway performs IPS insp	Each Gateway should have the Protection Scope in the IPS blade set to perform IPS inspectio	Corporate-GW (198.51.10	0 Medium	
Alter and Annance of the Anna Canada and Anna Cana					EuropeBranchGw (192.0.2	2 Medium	
And a second secon					HQgw (192.0.2.200)	Medium	
					Remote-1-gw (192.0.22.1) Medium	
1000 (1000) (100					Remote-2-gw (192.0.23.1) Medium	
Good Security					Remote-4-gw (192.0.25.1) Medium	
					RemoteBranchGw (198.5	1 Medium	
y	FW164	Firewall	Check that HTTPS Inspection is enabled on	HTTPS Inspection should be enabled on all Gateways that at least one of the following blades	BranchOffice (198.51.100	.7) Secure	
Antonia and Antonia an Antonia antonia ant					Corporate-GW (198.51.10	00 Secure	
					EuropeBranchGw (192.0.2	2 Secure	
And a secondaria d'any se de la secondaria d'any se de da la sec					HQgw (192.0.2.200)	Secure	
No. Operation Neuropa - Net Model Magnetization Constraining Model Magnetization Constraining Model Magnetization Constraining					Remote-1-gw (192.0.22.1) Poor	
Secure Security					Remote-2-gw (192.0.23.1) Poor	

- 6. Right-click an empty space in the report.
- 7. From the **Paste** drop-down menu, select the view you want to paste:

	Edit Mode	+ Add Page X Remove Page Obiscard O Done	\equiv Options \sim
SECURITY POLICIES LOGS & MONITOR		Check Point	
MANAGE & SETTINGS	General Activity Copy: "Gen	neral Activity"	
	High Risk Applications	APPLICATION and URL FILTERING	

8. Click Done.

Note - When you copy a view to another report, the copied view does not include the filter of the original report, only the filter of the copied view.

Report Settings

Reports can be configured according to these options:

Report Sett	ings			×
Name:	Application and URL Filtering	Τ.		1
Theme:	Default 👻			
Descriptior	1:			
				1
				•
	ОК		Cancel	

Configuring Email Settings for Views and Reports

You can automatically send views and reports by email to specified recipients each time the view or report runs.

Configuring Email Server Settings

Mail server settings in SmartConsole and SmartView are shared for all email interactions. For each SmartConsole administrator, configure them one time.

To configure email server settings:

- 1. Select a view or a report in the catalog.
- 2. Click Export to PDF, or Actions > Schedule PDF or Actions > Schedule CSV.
- 3. Click Send by email.
- 4. In the Email Server section, click Edit.

Note - In SmartView, you can edit the mail server on the user preferences menu.

- 5. Configure the email server options:
 - Sender email address. This shows on all report emails.
 - Outgoing mail server (SMTP)
 - Port The default port is 25.
 - Use authentication (Optional) if required by the email server, configure a Username and Password.

- Connection encryption (Optional) if required by the email server, choose SSL or TLS.
- 6. Click OK.

Configuring Email Recipients

Define the email recipients every time you run the view or report, or one time for scheduled reports.

To configure email recipients:

- 1. Select a view or a report from the catalog.
- 2. Click Export to PDF, or Actions > Schedule PDF or Actions > Schedule CSV.
- 3. Click Send by email.
- 4. In the **Email recipients** section, click + to enter an email address. You can add multiple addresses.
- 5. Click OK.

Adding a Logo to Reports

You can configure reports to show your company logo on report cover pages instead of the Check Point logo.

To add a logo to your reports:

- 1. Save your logo image as a PNG file with the name: cover-company-logo.png
- Copy the image to the \$RTDIR/smartview/conf/directory on the SmartEvent Server.Note - This applies when there is local SmartEvent on the Management Server. Otherwise, you must add the logo image to every machine the users connect to or the logo only displays when connected to the SmartEvent IP.

Note - The best image dimensions are 152 pixels wide by 94 pixels high.

Widgets

You can customize the widgets to optimize the visual display. To customize widgets, switch to edit mode. Click **Options > Edit**. You can copy a widget and use it in another view.

- To save changes, click **Done**.
- To cancel changes, click **Discard**.
- To restore the predefined view to the default values, click **Options > Restore Defaults**.

Note - Restore Defaults option is only available after you modify a predefined view.

Adding and Customizing Widgets

To add a Widget:

- 1. Double-click a view or report to open it.
- 2. Click **Options > Edit**.
- 3. Click Add Widget and select the widget type.

Chart Settings:

Chart Settings					×
General	Title:*	Attack Prevention by Policy			T.
Customize	Description:				
	Chart Type:	di 😑 🕒 🔺 ∧			
	Category (X): *	Action	Ŧ		
	Limit Categories:	10	* *		
	Value (Y):	Protection Name (Count)	*		
	Order values by:	Protection Name (Count)	*	Descending	+
	Stacked by:	None	Ŧ		
	Order stacked by:	Protection Name (Count)	Ψ.	Descending	Ŧ
			OK	Cancel	

- a. Enter a title.
- b. Select a chart type: vertical bar, horizontal bar, pie, area or line.
- c. Select a data category for the X axis.
- d. Define how the Top Values are calculated (by number of logs, or by traffic).
- e. Set a limit for how many top values to show.
- f. Optional: click **Series** Split the results into colored groups with different values for the series.

Chart Settings				×
General Series Customize	Series: Ordered by:	Application Risk	▼ Descending ▼	9
			OK Cancel	

g. Optional: click **Customize** and define axis titles and legend position.

Chart Settings					×
General	Axis titles:				
Customize	✓ Y:	Logs			
	X	Action			
	✓ Legend:	Тор	Ŧ		
	Data labels:	Percentages	*		
				OK	Cancel

Timeline Settings:

Timeline Settings				×
General	Title: *	Activity Timeline		T
Customize	Description:			
	Chart Type:	di 🗢 🖬 ∧		
	Value (Y):	Logs	Ŧ	
	Stacked by:	Action	.	
	Order stacked by:	Action	Ŧ	Descending 🔹
	Samples:	30	*	
			OK	Cancel

- a. Enter a title.
- b. Select a timeline graphical presentation: vertical bar, doughnut, area or line.
- c. Select the data to count.
- d. Advanced split the results into colored groups, with different values for the Series.
- e. Define the time-granularity. Enter the number of bars or doughnuts to show.

Widgets

Table Settings:

Table Settings						×
Title:* Top Blocked Applications / Sites Description:						۳.
Туре:	Statistical Table	•				
+ • • • •	ame sk	Results Number of values (up Show each value of Sort values by: Add summary Show results with Column Properties Column width: Column width: Column of caption for single Caption for multip	Application F row empty values ame: value:		Descending	
				OK	Cance	

- a. Enter a title.
- b. Manage columns: add, edit, remove, and change the order.
- c. Select a column on the left and define its settings:
 - Enter the number of top values to show.
 - Select how values are sorted.
- d. Select this option to group results with the same value in one row.

Map Settings:

Map Settings						×
Title:*	Top Source Countries					T
Description:						
Display top:	10					
	 Source Countries Destination Countries Source and Destination Countries 	itries				
Value:	Logs	*				
Ordered by:	Logs	*	Descendin	g		*
Split by:	None	*				
			OK	C	ancel	

- a. Enter a title.
- b. Enter the number of Top Countries to mark.
- c. Select to mark Top Source Countries, Top Destination Countries, or both.
- d. Define how to find the Top Countries (for example, by number of logs or by traffic).

The infographic widget shows large meaningful values. For example:



Infographic Settings:

Infographic Settings			×
Title: *	Total Traffic		
Field Name:	Traffic Total Bytes	;	*
Aggregate values by:	Sum		*
Filter:	T		
lcon:	traffic		Ŧ
Primary Text:	Total Traffic		
Secondary Text:			
Template:	Infographics Tem	plate 1	*
Horizontal Alignment:	Left		*
Vertical Alignment:	Тор		*
Style:	Normal		
		OK	Cancel

- a. Enter a title
- b. Select a field to count. Selecting **None** means all the logs that match the filter criteria are counted.
- c. Define filter criteria.

This criteria is in addition to the inherited filters for the report and view layers.

For more, see "Filters" on page 88.

d. Optional: Enter an icon name in the field.

Select a name from the list below. Pay attention to upper and lower case letters and the use of hyphens.

lcon	Used for
apps	
attacks	
hosts	
gateway	
traffic	
usercheck	
users	
new	Audit Logs
add	Audit Logs
remove	Audit logs
modify	Audit logs
install-policy	
publish	
ips	
anti-bot	
anti-virus	
threat-emulation	

- e. Enter primary text that describes the value counted.
- f. Optional: For secondary text, enter a more detailed description.

Use a container to unify multiple widgets into one frame. Add a container, then add, edit, or remove the widgets inside it.

Note - The container widget cannot be added to a container.

Container Settings:

Container Set	ttings			×
Title:	Statistics		T	
Description:				
Layout:	Horizontal 🔹			
		OK		Cancel

- a. Enter a title.
- b. Optional: filter at the container level. The filter applies to all internal widgets.
- c. Select the widget order inside the container: Horizontal, Vertical, Grid or Tabs.

After the container is added to the view, you can configure it further.

Allowed	× Remov	ve 🗸 🕂 Add 🗸 🍸 🎄 🗸 🗙
Top Sources	Top Destinations	
10.32.211.11 -	192.168.32.255 -	
10.143.241.28 -	labs-proxy-old.c –	-
10.126.217.103 -	10.149.68.195 -	
10.158.74.109 -	192.168.13.78 -	
10.132.5.82 -	10.135.105.84 -	
192.168.32.68 -	10.0.100.3 -	
192.168.32.109 -	0.0.2.85 -	
192.168.32.225 -	255.255.255.255 -	
192.168.4.116 -	10.7.210.4 -	
192.168.32.69 -	192.168.32.211 -	
1	100 300	100
U	100 200	0 100

- a. Remove the widget from the container.
- b. Add a new widget.
- c. Edit the settings for the container, or edit one of the widgets in the list.

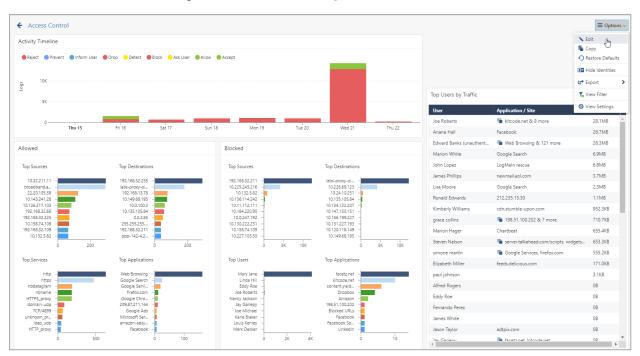
R	ich Te	ext Se	tting	ļS																			×
	Fo	rmat		•	Size	•	в	I	U	<u>A</u> -	aly_	۶	1 2 3	:=	≡	≡	≡	►¶	¶∢	Source			
																					OK	Cancel	

Use this window to add textual explanations to the View text box.

- 4. Click OK.
- 5. Select filters for the widget in addition to the inherited filters from the report and view layers. See "*Filters*" on page 88.
- 6. Configure settings for the widget.

To customize a widget:

1. In the view where the widget is located, click **Options > Edit**.



2. Go to the required widget and click the wheel icon to edit the image properties:.

Attack Prevention by Policy	🕒 ~ 🏹 🏧 🗙	Critical Attacks Allo	wed by Policy			
😑 Detect 🛛 🔵 Prevent	Chart Settings	•				×
[1896]	General Customize	Title: * Description: Chart Type:	Attack Prevention by Policy			۲.
	[82%]	Category (X): * Limit Categories: Value (Y):	Action 10 Protection Name (Count)	• • •		=
		Order Values by: Stacked by:	Protection Name (Count) None	▼	Descending	*
		Order Stacked by:	Protection Name (Count)	Oł	Descending Cancel	*

3. Edit the required properties.

4. Click Done.

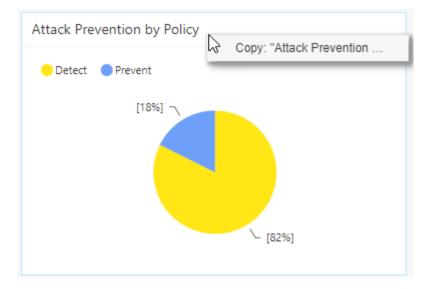
Edit Mode			🕂 Add Widget 🗸 🕤 Undo	🔿 Redo 🗴 Discard 🖉 Done			≡ 0
Statistics						× Remove ~	+ Add ~ 🔻 🔅
a 21	Gateways and Servers Reported these events	3 1 Publ	ished Sessions by administrators	Critical Attain Not prevented by pol	ck Types	1 32 Infe	ected Hosts
Software Blades	™ ↔ ×	Attack Prevention by Policy	€ ~ T , ⊗ ×	Critical Attacks Allowed by Policy			τ.
Blade	Logs 👻	Oetect Orevent		Attack	Severity	▼ Blade	Logs
))(() Syslog	39.9K	[18%] ¬		not-a-virus:Downloader.Win32.AdLoad.T.ef	Critical	😵 Anti-Virus	4
Firewall	31.5K			not-a-virus:WebToolbar.Win32.CroRi.cdz.W.ebic	Critical	😵 Anti-Virus	3
🔯 Anti-Virus	9.4K			Microsoft Windows RASMAN Service Memory C	Critical	🜒 IPS	2
😰 Anti-Bot	2.3K			Phishing.gmlph	Critical	😰 Anti-Bot	2
IPS 🔮	869			Exploited doc document	Critical	😵 Threat Emulation	1
Application Control	369		L [8296]	Malicious Binary.bndoegb	Critical	🤓 Anti-Virus	1
🖴 IIRI Filtering	263			Not A Vinur-downloader win32 anant E uv	Critical	noti-Minur	1
Timelines				× Remove ~ + Add ~	™ ⊗ ~ ×	Allowed High Risk Applications	≞ ~ τ , θ
Security Incidents (by Logs) High Critical 92 Applications and URL Filteri High Medium U	ng (by Logs) ow • Very Low • Unknown	3	(15)	(14)23.x	21	e High p304/rescinet -	

Copying Widgets to other Locations

You can copy a widget used in one view or report and paste it in another view or report.

To copy a widget to another location:

- 1. Right-click the required widget.
- 2. The copy option shows with the name of the widget:



- 3. Select Copy: [widget name].
- 4. Go to the view or report in which you want to paste the widget.

- ← Access Control Activity Timeline IN C Reject 🕤 Re 🔳 Hide Identitie 👉 Export ogs Top Users by Traffic 🍾 View Filter ø User hitcode.net & 8 n 28.1MB Thu 15 Wed 21 Ariana Hall Facebook 26.7MB Edward Banks (unaut) The Web Browsing & 121 more 26.3MB Allowed Blocked Marion White Google Search 6.9MB Top S Top Destination John Lopez LogMeIn rescue 6.8MB James Phillips newmail.aol.com 3.7MB 10.32.211.11 92,168,32,21 abs-proxy-ol... 10.226.69.123 10.24.10.251 10.135.105.84 2.3MB 10.225.243.2 Lisa Moore Google Search 10.132.5.8 10.136.114.24 10.11.112.111 10.184.220.9 10.0.247.19 1.1MB Ronald Edwards 212.235.15.30 10.134.122.207 10.147.150.151 10.166.199.227 952.3KB Kimberly Williams cdn.stumble-up 🐚 198.51.100.202 & 7 mor 710.7KB grace collins 10.130.222.23 0.131.227.193 Marion Hager 655.4KB Chartbeat 149.68.19 i server.tall 653.3KB Steven Nelson 200 n Google Services, firefo 555.2KB Top Users Elizabeth Miller 171.0KB 3.1KB paul joh Alfred Rogers OB Eddy Roe OB Fernando Pere OB James White OB OB Jason Taylor Isu Garian ٨R
- 5. Go to Options and select Edit:

6. Right-click an empty space in the view or report.

From the **Paste** drop-down menu, select the widget you want to paste:

andwidth	dt ~ T	¢ ×		
Medium 🔴 Low 🔍 Very Low 🔘 Unknown			Copy: "network traffic uyse"	
16MB			Paste	Software Blades (Less that is a software Blades)
14MB			$\overline{\mathbb{O}}$	Attack Prevention by Polic
12MB				Traffic (20 hours ago)
				Top Users by Traffic (21 h.
10MB				Traffic (21 hours ago)
8MB				
6MB				
4MB				
2MB				

7. Click Done.

Note - When you copy a widget to another view or report, the copied widget does not include the filter of the original view or report, only the filter defined for the copied widget.

Filters

The search bar is used to apply on-demand filters, but you can also save filters with the view / report definition.

Widgets

		+ Add Page × Re	emove Page 🕂 Add Widget 🗸 🕤 Undo 🔿 Redo 🔞	Discard 🥝 Done		= Opt
	Top Applications	≞~ % ⊗ ×	Top Categories	$\mathbb{H} \times (T_0 \otimes X)$	Top Users	S Edit S Edit Copy → Restore Defau
APPLICATION and URL FILTERING	facetz.net -		High Risk -		Joe Roberts —	💶 Hide Identitie
Provide State Stat	LogMein rescue –		Computers / Internet –		Mike Johnson -	G* Export
the second with	Google Search -		Remote Administration -		Louis Kenley —	Teport Filter
PPLICATION and URL FILTERING	Dropbox -		Search Engines / Portals –		Lisa Davis —	
PPEICATION and URL FILTERING	kitcode.net -		Web Advertisements -		Marion Hager -	Y View Filter
	209.87.211.144 -		File Storage and Sharing -		Marion White -	🔅 Report Setti
	Chartbeat -		Inactive Sites -		Steven Nelson -	View Setting
	Gmail-chat —		Uncategorized -		Jay Gariepy —	
····	Google Safe Browsing -		Business Applications –		Elizabeth Miller –	
	LogMein -		Browser Plugin -		James Phillips —	
	0 5	10 15 20	0 10	20 30 40	0 5 10	15 20 25
General Activity						
	Activity Timeline					dt∨ T \$
Product Variation Variation 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	Application Control URL Filtering Conte 90 80 70	nt Awareness				
High Risk Applications	60 50					

There are different layers of filters:

- 1. Filters to apply to the full report.
- 2. Filters to apply to a view (specified page in a report) and all widgets that this page includes.
- 3. Filters to apply to the selected widget.

To edit the view filter:

Edit View Filter			×
Blade T Equals	•	Application Control,Mobile Ap +	×
Hide Inherited Filter			
Report (Application and URL Filtering) Filter			
Pre-defined Filter	Default Report Filter	r	
Blade	Equals	Application Control, URL Filtering	
Use comma to filter for multiple values		OK Cancel	

1. Click the + (plus) button to add a filter. To delete a filter, click the X button.

- Select a field. To enable free text search, select Custom Filter.
- 3. Select a comparison method.
- Select or enter the value. You can define multiple values.

Filtering for Active Directory User Groups

You can filter logs, reports, and views for one or more Active Directory groups.

- 1. In your Access Control Policy, create an Access Role that includes all the Active Directory groups you want to have in the query.
- 2. Install the Access Control Policy on the Security Gateways.
- 3. Look at the Identity Awareness login logs, and copy the names of the relevant groups. They usually have the prefix "**ad_**".
- 4. Add a filter for the field **User Group** and type or paste the name of the group that you want to include in the filter. For multiple groups, use a comma-separated list.

Logging

SmartConsole lets you transform log data into security intelligence. Search results are fast and immediately show the log records you need. The Security Gateways send logs to the Log Servers on the Security Management Server or on a dedicated server. Logs show on the SmartConsole Logs & Events view > Logs tab. You can:

- Quickly search through logs with simple Google-like searches.
- Select from many predefined search queries to find the applicable logs.
- Create your own queries using a powerful query language.
- Monitor logs from administrator activity and connections in real-time.

For more information, see "Working with Logs" on page 95.

Sample Log Analysis

This is a sample procedure that shows how to do an analysis of a log of a dropped connection.

To show a log of a dropped connection:

- 1. Log into SmartConsole.
- 2. Connect to the IP address of the Security Management Server, not to a Log Server.
- 3. In the Security Policies > Access Control > Policy view, select a rule with the Drop action.
- 4. In the bottom pane, click **Logs**.

This shows the logs for connections that were dropped by the specific rule.

5. Double-click a log.

The Log Details window opens.

The Logs View

Q: •	🗊 Objects 🕶 🔮 II	nstall Policy					🛱 Discard Sess	ion • 🏐 Publish	
	Logs × General	Overview New Tab 🔔 New 1	Tab MITRE ATT&C	εκ ∣ +					
	(1)	(2)			-				
888	★ Queries <	> C C Q O Last 241	Hours • Enter sear	ch query (Ctrl+F	3)			= 🗊 🙋
GATEWAYS & SERVERS		Showing first 50 res	ults (251 ms) out of at I	least 126,284 results	\sim				Query Syntax
	Time		Source	Source User D	estination	Service Ac	Access Rule N	Policy Description	Tops ()
556	Today, 18:16:13	🏭 🔂 🍾 🛨 📼 GW	10.13.88.2		0.13.19.2	CPD amon (TCP/18192) 2	Cleanup rule	New-Se CPD_amon Traffic Accepted from 10.13.88.2 to 10.13.19.2	
SECURITY	Today, 18:16:13	🗰 🖲 🍾 🛓 📼 GW	10.13.19.254		194.29.36.43	HTTPS_proxy (TCP/80		New-Se HTTPS_proxy Traffic Dropped from amir (amir)(10.13.19.254) to 194	Top Sources
POLICIES	Today, 18:16:13	🗰 🖲 🖻 🛨 📼 GW	10.13.104.5	1	0.13.104.255	nbname (UDP/137)		New-Se nbname Traffic Dropped from 10.13.104.5 to 10.13.104.255	 Top Destinations
0	Today, 18:16:13	🎫 🔘 🍾 🛓 📼 GW	10.13.19.254	amir (amir) 🧕	194.29.36.43	HTTPS_proxy (TCP/80		New-Se HTTPS_proxy Traffic Dropped from amir (amir)(10.13.19.254) to 194	 Top Services
LOGS &	Today, 18:16:13	🏭 🔘 🍾 🛓 📼 GW	10.13.19.254	amir (amir) 🛛 🗖	194.29.36.43	HTTPS_proxy (TCP/80		New-Se HTTPS_proxy Traffic Dropped from amir (amir)(10.13.19.254) to 194	 Top Actions
MONITOR	Today, 18:16:13	🎫 🔘 📋 🛨 📼 GW	10.13.104.5	1	0.13.104.255	nbname (UDP/137)		New-Se nbname Traffic Dropped from 10.13.104.5 to 10.13.104.255	► Top Blades
	Today, 18:16:13	🎫 🤁 🍾 🛨 📼 GW	10.13.88.1	1	0.13.19.1	CPD_amon (TCP/18192) 2	Cleanup rule	New-Se CPD_amon Traffic Accepted from 10.13.88.1 to 10.13.19.1	 Top Origins
¢	Today, 18:16:13	🔛 🖲 📄 🛨 📼 GW	10.13.104.5	1	0.13.104.255	nbname (UDP/137)		New-Se nbname Traffic Dropped from 10.13.104.5 to 10.13.104.255	Top Users
MANAGE & SETTINGS	Today, 18:16:13	🎫 🔂 🍾 🛓 📼 GW	10.13.88.1	1	0.13.19.1	CPD_amon (TCP/18192) 2	Cleanup rule	New-Se CPD_amon Traffic Accepted from 10.13.88.1 to 10.13.19.1	 Top Applications
	Today, 18:16:13	🎫 😗 🍾 🛓 📼 GW	192.168.13.88	1	92.168.13.19	CPD_amon (TCP/18192) 2	Cleanup rule	New-Se CPD_amon Traffic Accepted from 192.168.13.88 to 192.168.13.19	
	Today, 18:16:13	🗰 🖲 🚹 🛨 📼 GW				UDP/8116 (UDP/8116)		New-Se UDP/8116 Traffic Dropped	
	Today, 18:16:13	🖽 🔘 🍾 🛓 📼 GW	10.13.19.254	amir (amir) 1	92.168.13.178	http (TCP/80)		New-Se http Traffic Dropped from amir (amir)(10.13.19.254) to 192.168.13.1	
	Today, 18:16:13	🇱 🖲 🚺 🛓 📼 GW				UDP/8116 (UDP/8116)		New-Se UDP/8116 Traffic Dropped	
	Today, 18:16:13	🏭 🖲 🚹 🛨 📼 GW				UDP/8116 (UDP/8116)		New-Se UDP/8116 Traffic Dropped	
	Today, 18:16:13	🎫 🖲 🚺 🛨 📼 GW		(5)		UDP/8116 (UDP/8116)		New-Se UDP/8116 Traffic Dropped	
	Today, 18:16:13	🔛 🖲 🚺 🛨 📼 GW		O		UDP/8116 (UDP/8116)		New-Se UDP/8116 Traffic Dropped	
	Today, 18:16:13	🗰 🖲 🚺 🛓 📼 GW				UDP/8116 (UDP/8116)		New-Se UDP/8116 Traffic Dropped	
	Today, 18:16:13	🏭 🤁 🍾 🛓 📼 GW	10.13.88.1		0.13.19.1	CPD_amon (TCP/18192) 2	Cleanup rule	New-Se CPD_amon Traffic Accepted from 10.13.88.1 to 10.13.19.1	
	Today, 18:16:13	🗰 😗 🍾 🛓 📼 GW	192.168.13.88		92.168.13.19	CPMI (TCP/18190) 2	Cleanup rule	New-Se CPMI Traffic Accepted from 192.168.13.88 to 192.168.13.19	
	Today, 18:16:13	🗰 🤁 🍾 🛓 📼 GW	192.168.13.88		92.168.13.19	CPD_amon (TCP/18192) 2	Cleanup rule	New-Se CPD_amon Traffic Accepted from 192.168.13.88 to 192.168.13.19	
	Today, 18:16:13	🗰 🔂 🍾 🛓 📼 GW	10.13.88.1	1	0.13.19.1	CPD_amon (TCP/18192) 2	Cleanup rule	New-Se CPD_amon Traffic Accepted from 10.13.88.1 to 10.13.19.1	
	Today, 18:16:13	IIII 💼 📼 192.168.13.19							
	Today, 18:16:13	🗰 😲 🍾 🛨 📼 GW	10.13.88.3		0.13.19.3	CPD_amon (TCP/18192) 2	Cleanup rule	New-Se CPD_amon Traffic Accepted from 10.13.88.3 to 10.13.19.3	
	Today, 18:16:13		192.168.13.88		92.168.13.19	CPD_amon (TCP/18192) 2	Cleanup rule	New-Se CPD_amon Traffic Accepted from 192.168.13.88 to 192.168.13.19	
	Today, 18:16:13		192.168.13.19	1	0.13.88.3	dest-unreach (ICMP)		New-Se dest-unreach Traffic Dropped from 192.168.13.19 to 10.13.88.3	
	Today, 18:16:13								
	Today, 18:16:13	IIII 📼 📼 192.168.13.19	а						

ltem	Description
1	Queries - Predefined and favorite search queries.
2	Time Period - Search with predefined custom time periods.
3	Query search bar - Define custom queries in this field. You can use the GUI tools or manually enter query criteria. Shows the query definition for the most recent query.
4	Log statistics pane - Shows top results of the most recent query.
5	Results pane - Shows log entries for the most recent query.

Note - On a Security Management Server with the "Enable Log Indexing" option not selected, and a dedicated Log Server with "Enable Log Indexing" option selected: When you connect with SmartConsole to the Security Management Server, the Logs view shows the logs of individual log files. It is not possible to get a unified view of all the logs.



- The selected "Default Time Frame" values are not synchronized between SmartConsole and SmartView. In SmartConsole, the export time of log records is based on the "Default time frame" that a user selected in SmartView > in the top right corner, click the user icon > click "User Preferences".
- The "Default Time Frame" configuration is not synchronized between the Primary / Secondary Management Server or Dedicated Log Server / Dedicated SmartEvent Servers.
- On a Multi-Domain Security Management Server, the "Default Time Frame" configuration is saved for each Domain for each user. Example:
 - 1. In SmartView "User Preferences", you selected "Last 7 Days".
 - 2. In SmartConsole "Logs" tab, you selected "Today".
 - 3. In SmartConsole you export the log records. These records are exported for the last 7 days.

Working with Logs

Choosing Rules to Track

Logs are useful if they show the traffic patterns you are interested in. Make sure your Security Policy tracks all necessary rules. When you track multiple rules, the log file is large and requires more disk space and management operations.

To balance these requirements, track rules that can help you improve your cyber security, help you understand of user behavior, and are useful in reports.

Configuring Tracking in a Policy Rule

To configure tracking in a rule:

- 1. Right-click in the **Track** column.
- 2. Select a tracking option.
- 3. Install the policy.

Tracking Options

Select these options in the **Track** column of a rule:

- None Do not generate a log.
- Log -This is the default Track option. It shows all the information that the Security Gateway used to match the connection. At a minimum, this is the Source, Destination, Source Port, and Destination Port. If there is a match on a rule that specifies an application, a session log shows the application name (for example, Dropbox). If there is a match on a rule that specifies a Data Type, the session log shows information about the files, and the contents of the files.
- Accounting Select this to update the log at 10 minutes intervals, to show how much data has passed in the connection: Upload bytes, Download bytes, and browse time.

Note - When upgrading from R77.X or from R80 versions to R82, there are changes to the behavior of the options in the **Track** column. To learn more see <u>sk116580</u>.

Advanced Track options

Detailed Log and **Extended Log** are only available if one or more of these Blades are enabled on the Layer: *Application & URL Filtering, Content Awareness*, or *Mobile Access*.

- Detailed Log -Equivalent to the Log option, but also shows the application that matched the connections, even if the rule does not specify an application. Best Practice - Use for a cleanup rule (Any/Internet/Accept) of an Applications and URL Filtering Policy Layer that was upgraded from an R77 Application Control Rule Base.
- Extended Log -Equivalent to the *Detailed* option, but also shows a full list of URLs and files in the connection or the session. The URLs and files show in the lower pane of the Logs view.

Log Generation

 per Connection - Select this to show a different log for each connection in the session. This is the default for rules in a Layer with only *Firewall* enabled. These are basic Firewall logs.

📵 Imi

Important - SmartEvent does not index these logs.

 per Session - Select this to generate one log for all the connections in the same session (see "Log Sessions" on page 112). This is the default for rules in a Layer with Application & URL Filtering or Content Awareness enabled. These are basic Application Control logs.

Alert:

For each alert option, you can define a script in **Menu > Global properties > Log and Alert > Alerts**.

- None Do not generate an alert.
- Alert Generate a log of type Alert and run a command, such as: Show a popup window, send an email alert or an SNMP trap alert, or run a user-defined script as defined in the Global Properties.
- SNMP Generate a log of type Alert and send an SNMP alert to the SNMP GUI, as defined in the Global Properties.
- Mail Generate a log of type Alert and send an email to the administrator, as defined in the Global Properties.
- User Defined Alert Generate a log of type Alert and send one of three possible customized alerts. The alerts are defined by the scripts specified in the Global Properties.

Log Sessions

A session is a user's activity at a specified site or with a specified application. The session starts when a *user* connects to an *application* or to a *site*. The Security Gateway includes all the activity that the user does in the session in one session log (in contrast to the Security Gateway log, which shows top sources, destinations, and services).

To search for log sessions:

In the Logs tab of the Logs & Events view, enter:

type:Session

To see details of the log session:

In the Logs tab of the Logs & Events view, select a session log.

In the bottom pane of the Logs tab, click the tabs to see details of the session log:

- Connections Shows all the connections in the session. These show if Per connection is selected in the Track option of the rule.
- URLs Shows all the URLs in the session. These show if Extended Log is selected in the Track option of the rule.
- Files Shows all the files uploaded or downloaded in the session. These show if Extended Log is selected in the Track option of the rule, or if a Data Type was matched on the connection.

To see the session log for a connection that is part of a session:

- 1. In the **Logs** tab of the **Logs & Events** view, double-click on the log record of a connection that is part of a session.
- 2. In the **Log Details**, click the session icon (a) (in the top-right corner) to search for the session log in a new tab.

To configure the session timeout:

By default, after a session continues for three hours, the Security Gateway starts a new session log. You can change this in SmartConsole from the Manage & Settings view, in Blades > Application & URL Filtering > Advanced Settings > General > Connection unification.

Viewing Rule Logs

You can search for the logs that are generated by a specific rule, from the Security Policy or from the Logs & Events > Logs tab.

To see logs generated by a rule (from the Security Policy):

- 1. In SmartConsole, From the left navigation panel, click Security Policies.
- 2. In the Access Control Policy or Threat Prevention Policy, select a rule.
- 3. In the bottom pane, click one of these tabs to see:

- Logs By default, shows the logs for the *Current Rule*. You can filter them by Source, Destination, Blade, Action, Service, Port, Source Port, Rule (Current rule is the default), Origin, User, or Other Fields.
- History (Access Control Policy only) List of rule operations (Audit logs) related to the rule in chronological order, with the information about the rule type and the administrator that made the change.

To see logs generated by a rule (by Searching the Logs):

- 1. In SmartConsole, go to the **Security Policies** view.
- 2. In the Access ControlPolicy or Threat Prevention Policy, select a rule.
- 3. Right-click the rule number and select Copy Rule UID.
- 4. In the Logs & Events > Logs tab, search for the logs in one of these ways:
 - Paste the Rule UID into the query search bar and click Enter.
 - For faster results, use this syntax in the query search bar:

layer_uuid_rule_uuid:*_<UID>

For example, paste this into the query search bar and click Enter:

layer uuid rule uuid:* 46f0ee3b-026d-45b0-b7f0-5d71f6d8eb10

To exclude logs generated by rules in a specific a layer from the SmartConsole Logs view:

- 1. In SmartConsole, From the left navigation panel, click Security Policies.
- 2. Go to Access Control > Policy, right-click the Policy Layer whose logs you want to exclude and click Edit Policy.
- 3. In the window that opens, go to the applicable layer, right-click the drop-down menu, and select **Edit Layer**.
- Add a downward arrow ↓ to the layer's name. You can add the downward arrow in two ways:
 - Copy it from here: ↓

Or

- Enter the corresponding ASCII code:
 - a. Press and hold the Alt key.
 - b. Enter the digit 2.
 - c. Enter the digit 5.
 - d. Release the Alt key.

Example:



Notes:

- The excluded layers are not displayed in the Logs view when the action is not blocked or dropped.
- When a Layer is excluded, the Logs tab shows logs from rules in the next Layer below the excluded Layer.
- If all the Layers in a policy are excluded, the Logs tab shows logs from rules that belong to the first (top) Layer in the policy.

Packet Capture

You can capture network traffic. The content of the packet capture provides a greater insight into the traffic which generated the log. With this feature activated, the Security Gateway sends a packet capture file with the log to the Log Server. You can open the file, or save it to a file location to retrieve the information a later time.

For some blades, the packet capture option is activated by default in the Custom Threat Prevention Policy.

To deactivate packet capture (in the Custom Threat Prevention Policy only):

- 1. In SmartConsole, go to the **Security Policies** view > **Threat Prevention** > **Custom Threat Prevention**.
- 2. In the Track column of the rule, right-click and clear Packet Capture.

To see a packet capture:

- 1. In SmartConsole, go to the Logs & Events view.
- 2. Open the log.

3. Click the link in the **Packet Capture** field.

The **Packet Capture** opens in a program associated with the file type.

4. Optional: Click Save to save the packet capture data on your computer.

Searching the Logs

SmartConsole lets you quickly and easily search the logs with many predefined log queries or customized log queries. Queries can include one or more criteria. You can modify an existing predefined query or create a new one in the query search box.

To see the predefined queries:

- 1. Open SmartConsole > Logs & Events view.
- 2. Click Queries.
- 3. Select the applicable pre-defined query.

To modify a predefined query:

Click inside the query box to add search filters.

To manually enter query text:

- 1. In the query search bar, click Enter Search Query (Ctrl+F).
- 2. Enter the search query in the search box.
- 3. As you enter text, the query search box shows recently used query criteria or full queries. To use these search suggestions, select them from the drop-down list.

To manually refresh your query:

Click Refresh (F5).

To continuously refresh your query (Auto-Refresh):

Click Auto - Refresh (F6). The icon is highlighted when Auto-Refresh is enabled.

The query continues to update every five seconds while Auto-Refresh is enabled. If the number of logs exceeds 100 in a five-second period, the logs are aggregated, and the summary view shows.

Selecting Query Fields

You can enter query criteria directly from the query search bar.

To select field criteria:

- 1. If you start a new query, click **Clear** \times to remove query definitions.
- 2. Put the cursor in the query search bar.
- 3. Click Add a search filter.
- 4. Select a filter from the drop-down list.
- 5. Enter the applicable criteria in the query search bar.

Using the Action Filter

One of the search filters is **Action**. When you select the **Action** filter, a list shows with all the log actions available for searching. This table lists and explains these log actions.

Action	Description
Accept	The Security Gateway allowed traffic based on the Access Control Security Policy.
Allow	The Security Gateway allowed traffic after Firewall or a VPN alert (for example: Protocol Violation) or DLP match on an exception to a rule.
Ask User	 The user was prompted to decide if the Security Gateway must block or allow specific traffic, based on Access Control or Custom Threat Prevention Security Policies. Or A DLP incident was captured and put in quarantine. The user was asked to decide what to do.
Block	The Security Gateway blocked traffic based on a URL Filtering or Application Control rule, after a user opted a UserCheck block Action.
Bypass	Threat Emulation, Threat Extraction or Anti-Virus did not inspect a file.
Decrypt	The Security Gateway decrypted a VPN packet to reveal its content and allow further inspection.
Detect	A Threat Prevention blade detected malicious traffic but did not block it because it worked in the Detect mode.
Do not send	User decided to drop transmission that was captured by DLP. An administrator with full permissions or with the View, Release or Discard DLP messages permission can also drop these transmissions. Email notification was sent to the user.

Action	Description
Drop	The Security Gateway blocked traffic based on the Access Control Security Policy and did not notify the source.
Encrypt	The Security Gateway encrypted a VPN packet to secure its contents and prevent unauthorized access.
Extract	Threat Extraction extracted potentially malicious content from a file before the file entered the network.
Forgot Passcode	User tapped Forgot Passcode in the Capsule Workspace application.
HTTPS Bypass	The Security Gateway allowed network traffic to bypass HTTPS Inspection.
HTTPS Inspect	The Security Gateway inspected HTTPS traffic.
Inform User	 The user was informed what the organization's policy was, based on the Access Control or Custom Threat Prevention Security Policies. Or DLP transmission was detected and allowed, and the user was notified.
Inline	Traffic was sent for emulation before it was allowed to enter the internal network.
Inspect	Threat Emulation or Anti-Virus inspected a fie.
IP Changed	An association between a specific IP address and a user changed, because the IP address on the associated host changed (DHCP).
Key Install	The Security Gateway created encryption keys for VPN.
Open Shell	An administrator opened a command shell to a Gaia server.
Packet Tagging	The Security Gateway shared a packet tagging key with an Identity Agent.
Prevent	The Security Gateway blocked traffic based on the DLP or Threat Prevention policy.
Quarantine	The Security Gateway isolated an email that was identified as a potential security threat, until further investigation is made.

Action	Description
Reject	The Security Gateway rejected the packet and notified the source with the TCP [RST] packet.
Remote Wipe	The Security Gateway removed offline data cached on a user mobile device with Capsule Workspace Application.
Reset Passcode	User tapped Reset Passcode in the Capsule Workspace application.
Run Script	An administrator executed a script on a Gaia server from SmartConsole.
Send	User decided to continue transmission after DLP capture. An administrator with full permissions or with the View/Release/Discard DLP messages permission can also decide to continue transmission. Email notification is sent to the user.
System Backup	An administrator backed up the configuration of the Gaia Operating System of the Security Gateway.
System Restore	An administrator retrieved a backup file and restored configuration of the Gaia Operating System of the Security Gateway.
Update	The Security Gateway downloaded and installed the latest version or Hotfix.
VPN Routing	The Security Gateway directed the VPN traffic through the appropriate specific VPN tunnel or Security Gateway.

Selecting Criteria from Table Columns

You can use the column headings in the logs table to select query criteria.

To select query criteria from the table columns:

- 1. In the **Results** pane, right-click a column heading.
- 2. Select Add Filter.
- Select or enter the filter criteria.
 The criteria show in the query search box and the query runs automatically.

Saving a New Query

To save a new query in the Favorites list:

1. Click Queries > Add to Favorites.

The Add to Favorites window opens.

- 2. Enter a name for the query.
- 3. Select or create a new folder to store the query
- 4. Click Add.

Viewing Search Results

Query results can include tens of thousands of log records. To prevent performance degradation, SmartConsole only shows the first set of results in the **Results** pane. Typically, this is a set of 50 results.

Scroll down to show more results. As you scroll down, SmartConsole extracts more records from the log index on the Security Management Server or Log Server, and adds them to the results set. See the number of results above the **Results** pane.

For example, on the first run of a query, you can see the first 50 results out of over 150,000 results. When you scroll down, you can see the first 100 results out of over 150,000.

The **Tops** pane, on the right side of the **Results** pane, shows the top statistics such as top sources, top actions, etc.



- Top statistics are estimated according to the partial log results already shown on the screen. They are not calculated for the entire query timeframe.
- A query that refers to these log fields is not resolved:
 - Scan result
 - Destination DNS Hostname

Customizing the Results Pane

By default, SmartConsole shows a predefined set of columns and information based on the selected blade in your query. This is known as the **Column Profile**. For example:

- The DLP column profile includes columns for: Blade, Type, DLP Incident UID, and severity.
- The Threat Prevention column profile includes columns for: Origin, Action, Severity, and Source User.

A column profile is assigned based on the blade that occurs most frequently in the query results. This is called **Automatic Profile Selection**, and is enabled by default.

The Column Profile defines which columns show in the **Results Pane** and in which sequence. You can change the Column Profile as necessary for your environment.

To use the default Column Profile assignments:

Right-click a column heading and select Columns Profile > Automatic Profile Selection.

To manually assign Column Profile assignments by default:

Right-click a column heading and select Columns Profile > Manual Profile Selection.

To manually assign a different Column Profile:

- 1. Right-click a column heading and select Columns Profile.
- 2. Select a Column Profile from the options menu.

To change a Column Profile:

- 1. Right-click a column heading and select Columns Profile > Edit Profile.
- 2. In the Show Fields window, select a Column Profile to change.
- 3. Select fields to add from the Available Fields column.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Select fields to remove from the Selected Fields column.
- 6. Click Remove.
- 7. Select a field in the **Selected Fields**.
- 8. Click Move Up or Move Down to change its position in the Results Pane.
- 9. Double-click the Width column to change the default column width for the selected field.

To change the column width:

- 1. Drag the right column border in the **Results** Pane.
- 2. Right-click and select Save Profile.

Changes made to the column are saved for future sessions.

Creating Custom Queries

Queries can include one or more criteria. You can modify an existing predefined query or create a new one in the query box.

To modify a predefined query:

Click inside the query box to add search filters.

To save the new query in the Favorites list:

1. Click **Queries > Add to Favorites**.

The Add to Favorites window opens.

- 2. Enter a name for the query.
- 3. Select or create a new folder to store the query
- 4. Click Add.

Selecting Query Fields

You can enter query criteria directly from the Query search bar.

To select field criteria:

- 1. If you start a new query, click **Clear** \times to remove query definitions.
- 2. Put the cursor in the Query search bar.
- 3. Select a criterion from the drop-down list or enter the criteria in the Query search bar.

Selecting Criteria from Grid Columns

You can use the column headings in the **Grid** view to select query criteria. This option is not available in the **Table** view.

To select query criteria from grid columns:

- 1. In the **Results** pane, right-click on a column heading.
- 2. Select Add Filter.
- 3. Select or enter the filter criteria. The criteria show in the **Query search bar** and the query runs automatically.

Manually Entering Query Criteria

You can enter query criteria directly in the **Query search bar**. You can manually create a new query or make changes to an existing query that shows in the **Query search bar**.

As you enter text, the **Search** shows recently used query criteria or full queries. To use these search suggestions, select them from the drop-down list.

Query Language Overview

A powerful query language lets you show only selected records from the log files, according to your criteria. To create complex queries, use Boolean operators, wildcards, fields, and ranges. This section refers in detail to the query language.

When you use SmartConsole to create a query, the applicable criteria show in the **Query** search bar.

The basic query syntax is [<Field>:] <Filter Criterion>.

To put together many criteria in one query, use Boolean operators:

```
[<Field>:] <Filter Criterion> {AND|OR|NOT} [<Field>:] <Filter
Criterion> ...
```

Most query keywords and filter criteria are not case sensitive, but there are some exceptions. For example, "source:<x>" is case sensitive ("Source:<x>" does not match). If your query results do not show the expected results, change the case of your query criteria, or try upper and lower case.

When you use queries with more than one criteria value, an AND is implied automatically, so there is no need to add it. Enter OR or other boolean operators if needed.

Criteria Values

Criteria values are written as one or more text strings. You can enter one text string, such as a word, IP address, or URL, without delimiters. Phrases or text strings that contain more than one word must be surrounded by quotation marks.

One word string examples:

- John
- inbound
- 192.168.2.1
- mahler.ts.example.com
- dns_udp

Phrase examples

- "John Doe"
- "Log Out"
- "VPN-1 Embedded Connector"

IP Addresses

IPv4 and IPv6 addresses used in log queries are counted as one word. Enter IPv4 address with dotted decimal notation and IPv6 addresses with colons.

Example:

- 192.0.2.1
- 2001:db8::f00:d

You can also use the *wildcard* '*' character and the *standard network suffix* to search for logs that match IP addresses within a range.

Examples:

- src:192.168.0.0/16 (shows all records for the source IP 192.168.0.0 to 192.168.255.255 inclusive)
- src:192.168.1.0/24 (shows all records for the source IP 192.168.1.0 to 192.168.1.255 inclusive)
- src:192.168.2.* shows all records for the source IP 192.168.2.0 to 192.168.2.255 inclusive
- 192.168.* shows all records for 192.168.0.0 to 192.168.255.255 inclusive

NOT Values

You can use NOT *<field>* values with *Field Keywords* in log queries to find logs for which the value of the field is not the value in the query.

Syntax

NOT <field>: <value>

Example

NOT src:10.0.4.10

Wildcards

You can use the standard wildcard characters (* and ?) in queries to match variable characters or strings in log records. You can use more than the wildcard character.

Wildcard syntax:

- The ? (question mark) matches one character.
- The * (asterisk) matches a character string.

Examples:

- Jo? shows Joe and Jon, but not Joseph.
- Jo* shows Jon, Joseph, and John Paul.

If your criteria value contains more than one word, you can use the wildcard in each word. For example, 'Jo* N*' shows Joe North, John Natt, Joshua Named, and so on.

Note - Using a single '*' creates a search for a non-empty value string. For example assetname:*

Field Keywords

You can use predefined field names as keywords in filter criteria. The query result only shows log records that match the criteria in the specified field. If you do not use field names, the query result shows records that match the criteria in all fields.

This table shows the predefined field keywords. Some fields also support keyword aliases that you can type as alternatives to the primary keyword.

Keyword	Keyword Alias	Description		
severity		Severity of the event		
app_risk		Potential risk from the application, of the event		
protection		Name of the protection		
protection_ type		Type of protection		
confidence_ level		Level of confidence that an event is malicious		
action		Action taken by a security rule		
blade	product	Software Blade		
destination	dst	Traffic destination IP address, DNS name or Check Point network object name		
origin	orig	Name of originating Security Gateway		
service		Service that generated the log entry		
source	src	Traffic source IP address, DNS name or Check Point network object name		
user		User name		

Syntax for a field name query:

<field name>:<values>

- <field name> One of the predefined field names
- <values> One or more filters

To search for rule number, use the **Rule** field name. For example:

rule:7.1

If you use the rule number as a filter, rules in all the Layers with that number are matched.

To search for a rule name, you must not use the **Rule** field. Use free text. For example:

"Block Credit Cards"

Best Practice - Do a free text search for the rule name. Make sure rule names are unique and not reused in different Layers.

Examples:

- source:192.168.2.1
- action:(Reject OR Block)

You can use the OR Boolean operator in parentheses to include multiple criteria values.

Important - When you use fields with multiple values, you must:

- Write the Boolean operator, for example AND.
- Use parentheses.

Boolean Operators

You can use the Boolean operators AND, OR, and NOT to create filters with many different criteria. You can put multiple Boolean expressions in parentheses.

If you enter more than one criteria without a Boolean operator, the **AND** operator is implied. When you use multiple criteria without parentheses, the **OR** operator is applied before the **AND** operator.

Examples:

blade:"application control" AND action:block

Shows log records from the Application and URL Filtering Software Blade where traffic was blocked.

192.168.2.133 10.19.136.101

Shows log entries that match the two IP addresses. The AND operator is presumed.

■ 192.168.2.133 OR 10.19.136.101

Shows log entries that match one of the IP addresses.

• (blade: Firewall OR blade: IPS OR blade: VPN) AND NOT action:drop

Shows all log entries from the Firewall, IPS or VPN blades that are not dropped. The criteria in the parentheses are applied before the AND NOT criterion.

source:(192.168.2.1 OR 192.168.2.2) AND destination:17.168.8.2

Shows log entries from the two source IP addresses if the destination IP address is 17.168.8.2. This example also shows how you can use Boolean operators with field criteria.

Log Sessions

A session is a user's activity at a specified site or with a specified application. The session starts when a *user* connects to an *application* or to a *site*. The Security Gateway includes all the activity that the user does in the session in one session log (in contrast to the Security Gateway log, which shows top sources, destinations, and services).

To search for log sessions:

In the Logs tab of the Logs & Events view, enter:

type:Session

To see details of the log session:

In the Logs tab of the Logs & Events view, select a session log.

In the bottom pane of the Logs tab, click the tabs to see details of the session log:

- **Connections** Shows all the connections in the session. These show if **Per connection** is selected in the **Track** option of the rule.
- URLs Shows all the URLs in the session. These show if Extended Log is selected in the Track option of the rule.
- Files Shows all the files uploaded or downloaded in the session. These show if Extended Log is selected in the Track option of the rule, or if a Data Type was matched on the connection.

To see the session log for a connection that is part of a session:

- 1. In the **Logs** tab of the **Logs & Events** view, double-click on the log record of a connection that is part of a session.
- 2. In the **Log Details**, click the session icon (a) (in the top-right corner) to search for the session log in a new tab.

To configure the session timeout:

By default, after a session continues for three hours, the Security Gateway starts a new session log. You can change this in SmartConsole from the Manage & Settings view, in Blades > Application & URL Filtering > Advanced Settings > General > Connection unification.

Tracking Options

Select these options in the **Track** column of a rule:

- None Do not generate a log. This is the default option.
- Log Show all the information that the Security Gateway used to match the connection. At a minimum, this is the Source, Destination, Source Port, and Destination Port. If there is a match on a rule that specifies an application, a session log shows the application name (for example, Dropbox). If there is a match on a rule that specifies a Data Type, the session log shows information about the files, and the contents of the files.
- Accounting Select this to update the log at 10 minutes intervals, to show how much data has passed in the connection: Upload bytes, Download bytes, and browse time. Browse time is the total duration of a user session, including both active usage and idle time. The session will timeout after the defined idle time. Idle time is the period within a session when there is no user activity, but the connection remains open.
- Note When upgrading from R77.X or from R80 versions to R82, there are changes to the behavior of the options in the Track column. To learn more, see <u>sk116580</u>.

Advanced Track options

Detailed Log and **Extended Log** are only available if one or more of these Blades are enabled on the Layer: *Application & URL Filtering, Content Awareness*, or *Mobile Access*.

- Detailed Log -Equivalent to the Log option, but also shows the application that matched the connections, even if the rule does not specify an application. Best Practice - Use for a cleanup rule (Any/internet/Accept) of an Applications and URL Filtering Policy Layer that was upgraded from an R77 Application Control Rule Base.
- Extended Log -Equivalent to the *Detailed* option, but also shows a full list of URLs and files in the connection or the session. The URLs and files show in the lower pane of the Logs view.
- Note The Detailed Log and Extended Log options have a higher performance impact on the Security Gateway than the Log option, because they inspect the packets and connections more thoroughly.

Log Generation

 per Connection - Select this to show a different log for each connection in the session. This is the default for rules in a Layer with only *Firewall* enabled. These are basic Firewall logs. per Session - Select this to generate one log for all the connections in the same session (see "Log Sessions" on page 112). This is the default for rules in a Layer with Application & URL Filtering or Content Awareness enabled. These are basic Application Control logs.

Alert:

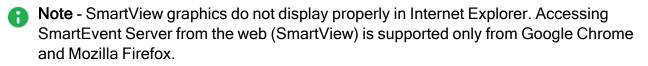
For each alert option, you can define a script in **Menu > Global properties > Log and Alert > Alerts**.

- None Do not generate an alert.
- Alert Generate a log of type Alert and run a command, such as: Show a popup window, send an email alert or an SNMP trap alert, or run a user-defined script as defined in the Global Properties.
- SNMP Generate a log of type Alert and send an SNMP alert to the SNMP GUI, as defined in the Global Properties.
- Mail Generate a log of type Alert and send an email to the administrator, as defined in the Global Properties.
- User Defined Alert Generate a log of type Alert and send one of three possible customized alerts. The alerts are defined by the scripts specified in the Global Properties.

SmartView Web Application

Use Case - You are the system administrator at a small company and are concerned that some employees spend too much time looking at Facebook. You want a way to monitor the employee application use.

The SmartView Web Application is one of the SmartEvent clients that you can use to analyze events that occur in your environment. Use the SmartView Web Application to see an overview of the security information for your environment. It has the same real-time event monitoring and analysis views as SmartConsole. The convenience is that you do not have to install a client.



To log in to SmartEvent using SmartView Web Application:

Browse to:

https://<IP Address of Management Server>/smartview/

or

https://<Host Name of Management Server>/smartview/

Notes:

- The /smartview/ part of the URL is case sensitive.
- When you open the SmartView Web Application on a Standalone server (a server which runs both a Security Management Server and a Security Gateway), these web portals stop working:
 - The Gaia Portal (https://<Server IP Address> and https://<Server IP Address>:4434)
 - The API documentation portal (https://<Server IP Address>/api docs)
 - Web SmartConsole (https://<Server IP Address>/smartconsole)
- Login to SmartView Web Application is supported only using Check Point Password authentication configured in the administrator object in SmartConsole.

SmartView advantages:

- Available for non-admin users
- Export up to 1,000,000 logs

- Integrated top statistics and docked card
- Support for High Contrast theme

In SmartView:

SmartView opens by default in the General Overview tab. This shows the statistics, Software Blades, timelines, and more. Any open tabs from the previous session are retained.



Note - SmartView Web Application is available even without SmartEvent Software Blade, but the default page is different.

To open a new tab, click +.

The Audit Logs tab shows audit logs which are changes done in the management.

The Logs > Logs View tab shows blade activities.

In SmartView, you first filter for the application and then by user.

- 1. Click the + icon to open a new tab.
- 2. Click Views > Access Control.
- 3. Right-click the **User** column and drill down to see the user activity or create a filter for this user in your current view.

You can schedule for all activities for a user, but cannot set the system to trigger an alert at a certain threshold.

To select which columns are shown:

1. Right-click on a column heading and select **Profile editor**.

The Profile editor window opens.

- 2. Select fields to add to or remove from the selected profile.
- 3. Click OK.

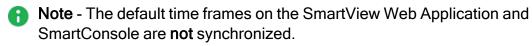
To set user display preferences:

- 1. Click the drop-down arrow next to your user name and select User Preferences.
- 2. For Locale, select the display language.
- 3. For **First day of the week**, select the day of the week for the weekly logs to start.
- 4. For Theme, select Default or High Contrast.

In **High Contrast**, the view display is white text on a black background.

5. In **Default time frame**, set the default timeframe for all the SmartView Web Application functionalities.

The default value is Last 24 hours.



- 6. For Email server settings, select Edit to enter the email server details.
- 7. Click OK.

Exporting Logs

Apply a filter to select the logs you want to export. Currently, you can only export logs to CSV.

To export logs:

1. In the Logs tab, click Options and select Export > Export to CSV.

The CSV Export window opens.

- 2. Select the Logs Amount.
- 3. Select the Exported Columns All columns or Visible columns.
- 4. Click OK.
- 5. A popup window appears when the export process starts.

When you see a message that the exported completed successfully, click **Download**.

All exported logs also appear in the archive tab.

Log Server High Availability

In SmartConsole, you can configure a Security Gateway, that when it fails to send its logs to one Log Server, it will send its logs to a secondary Log Server. To support this configuration, you can add Log Servers to a single SmartEvent Correlation Unit. In this way, the SmartEvent Correlation Unit gets an uninterrupted stream of logs from both servers and continues to correlate all logs.

Working with Syslog Servers

Introduction

Syslog (System Logging Protocol) is a standard protocol used to send system log or event messages to a specific server, the *syslog server*.

The syslog protocol is enabled on most network devices, such as routers and switches.

Syslog is used by many log analysis tools. If you want to use these tools, make sure Check Point logs are sent to from the Security Gateway to the syslog server in syslog format.

Check Point supports these syslog protocols: RFC 3164 (old) and RFC 5424 (new).

These features are not supported: IPv6 logs and Software Blade logs.

Configuring Security Gateways

By default, Security Gateway logs are sent to the Security Management Server.

You can configure Security Gateways to send logs directly to syslog servers.

Important - Syslog is not an encrypted protocol. Make sure the Security Gateway and the Log Proxy are located close to each other and that they communicate over a secure network.

Procedure

1. Define syslog server objects in SmartConsole.

Instructions

- a. Connect with SmartConsole to the Management Server.
- b. From the left navigation panel, click Gateways & Servers.
- c. Create the Host object that represents the Syslog server host.
 - i. In the Object Explorer, click **New > Host**.
 - ii. Configure these fields:
 - Name Enter a unique name.
 - IPv4 address Enter the correct IPv4 address of the syslog server.
 - IPv6 address Optional: Enter the correct IPv6 address of the syslog server. This requires the IPv6 Support be enabled on the Security Gateway / each Cluster Member.
 - iii. Click OK.

- d. Create the Syslog Server object that represents the Syslog server:
 - i. In the Object Explorer, click **New > Server > More > Syslog**.
 - ii. Configure these fields:
 - Name Enter a unique name.
 - Host Select an existing host or click New to define a new computer or appliance.
 - Port Enter the correct port number on the syslog server (default = 514).
 - Version Select BSD Protocol or Syslog Protocol.
 - iii. Click OK.
- e. Close the Object Explorer.
- 2. Select the configured syslog server objects in the Security Gateway / Cluster object.

Instructions

- a. Double-click the Security Gateway object.
- b. From the left tree, click Logs.
- c. In the **Send logs and alerts to these log servers** table, click the green (+) button to select the **Syslog Server** object(s) you configured earlier.

Notes:

- You can configure a Security Gateway / Cluster Member to send logs to multiple syslog servers.
 - All syslog servers selected in the Security Gateway / Cluster object must use the same protocol version: *BSD Protocol* or *Syslog Protocol*.
- You cannot configure a Syslog server as a backup server.
- d. Click OK.
- e. Install policy.
- 3. Configure the logging properties of the Security Gateways / each Cluster Member.

The kernel parameter fwsyslog_enable optimizes logging performance in environments that require high log rates.

Enable this kernel parameter only if explicitly instructed by Check Point Support.

fwsyslog_enable=0: Firewall logs are sent to the Syslog Server through the user space Syslog daemon (this is the default).

fwsyslog_enable=1: Firewall logs are sent to the Syslog Server directly from the Gaia OS kernel.

1 Note - In a Cluster, you must configure each Cluster Member in the same way.

To see the current state of the fwsyslog_enable parameter

- a. Connect to the command line on the Security Gateway / each Cluster Member.
- b. Log in to the Expert mode.
- c. Run:

fw ctl get int fwsyslog enable

Output:

- "fwsyslog_enable = 0" means that Firewall logs are sent to the Syslog Server through the user space Syslog daemon (this is the default).
- "fwsyslog_enable = 1" means Firewall logs are sent to the Syslog Server directly from the Gaia OS kernel.

To set the state of the fwsyslog_enable parameter to (1) temporarily (does not survive reboot)

- a. Connect to the command line on the Security Gateway / each Cluster Member.
- b. Log in to the Expert mode.
- c. Run:

fw ctl set int fwsyslog enable 1

d. In SmartConsole, install policy on this Security Gateway / Cluster object.

To set the state of the fwsyslog_enable parameter to (1) permanently (survives reboot)

- a. Connect to the command line on the Security Gateway / each Cluster Member.
- b. Log in to the Expert mode.
- c. Edit the \$FWDIR/boot/modules/fwkern.conf file:

vi \$FWDIR/boot/modules/fwkern.conf

d. Add this line:

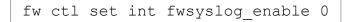
fwsyslog_enable=1

e. Save the changes in the file and exit the editor.

f. Reboot the Security Gateway / each Cluster Member.

To set the state of the fwsyslog_enable parameter to (0) temporarily (does not survive reboot)

- a. Connect to the command line on the Security Gateway / each Cluster Member.
- b. Log in to the Expert mode.
- c. Run:



To set the state of the fwsyslog_enable parameter to (0) permanently (survives reboot)

- a. Connect to the command line on the Security Gateway / each Cluster Member.
- b. Log in to the Expert mode.
- c. Edit the \$FWDIR/boot/modules/fwkern.conf file:

vi \$FWDIR/boot/modules/fwkern.conf

- d. Do one of these actions:
 - Set the value of the kernel parameter to 0:

fwsyslog enable=0

Delete the entire line:

fwsyslog enable=1

- e. Save the changes in the file and exit the editor.
- f. Reboot the Security Gateway / each Cluster Member.

Log Count for CoreXL Firewall Instances

You can see the current number of syslog logs sent by CoreXL Firewall Instances on the Security Gateway / each Cluster Member.

To see log count for a CoreXL Firewall instance

- 1. Connect to the command line on the Security Gateway / each Cluster Member.
- 2. Log in to the Expert mode.
- 3. Run:

```
fw -i <CoreXL Firewall Instance Number> ctl get fwsyslog_
nlogs counter
```

Sample output:

```
fwsyslog nlogs counter = 21
```

To see log count for all CoreXL Firewall instances

- 1. Make two command line connections to the Security Gateway / each Cluster Member.
- 2. In each command line connection, log in to the Expert mode.
- 3. In the first shell, run:

fw ctl zdebug | grep logs

4. In the second shell, run:

fw ctl set int fwsyslog print counter 1

5. In the first shell, see the counter for each CoreXL Firewall instance and the sum of all CoreXL Firewall instances.

Sample output:

```
;[cpu_2];[fw4_0];Number of logs sent from instance 0 is 43;
;[cpu_2];[fw4_0];Number of logs sent from instance 1 is 39;
;[cpu_2];[fw4_0];Number of logs sent from instance 2 is 50;
;[cpu_2];[fw4_0];Total logs sent from kernel (all instances)
= 132;
```

6. In the first shell, press CTRL+C to stop the debug.

For more on syslog, see: "Appendix: Manual Syslog Parsing" on page 289.

Event Analysis

Event Analysis with SmartEvent

The SmartEvent Software Blade is a unified security event management and analysis solution that delivers real-time, graphical threat management information. SmartConsole, SmartView Web Application, and the SmartEvent GUI client consolidate billions of logs and show them as prioritized security events so you can immediately respond to security incidents, and do the necessary actions to prevent more attacks. You can customize the views to monitor the events that are most important to you. You can move from a high level view to detailed forensic analysis in a few clicks. With the free-text search and suggestions, you can quickly run data analysis and identify critical security events.

Note - SmartEvent is not supported in a Full High Availability Cluster configuration.

What is an Event?

G

An *event* is a record of a security incident. It is based on one or more logs, and on rules that are defined in the Event Policy.

An example of an event that is based on one log: A High Severity Anti-Bot event. One Anti-Bot log with a Severity of High causes the event to be recorded.

An example of an event that is based on more than one log: A Certificate Sharing event. Two login logs with the same certificate and a different user cause the event to be recorded.

How Are Logs Converted to Events?

SmartEvent automatically defines logs that are not Firewall, VPN, or HTTPS Inspection logs, as events.

Events that are based on a suspicious pattern of one or more logs, are created by the SmartEvent Correlation Unit. These *correlated events* are defined in the SmartEvent client GUI, in the Policy tab.

Most logs are Firewall, VPN and HTTPS inspection logs. Therefore, SmartEvent does not define them as events by default to avoid a performance impact on the SmartEvent Server.

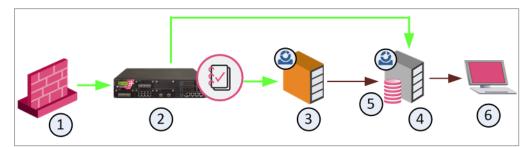
For logs from Security Gateways R77.X and lower: To create events for Firewall, in the SmartEvent Policy tab, enable **Consolidated Sessions > Firewall Session**.

The SmartEvent Architecture

SmartEvent has some components that work together to help track down security threats and make your network more secure.

This is how they work together. The numbers refer to the diagram:

- SmartEvent Correlation Unit (3) analyzes log entries on Log Servers (2) and stores the event in the same way the log server stores logs.
- SmartEvent Server (4) contains the Events Database (5).
- The SmartEvent and SmartConsole clients (6) manage the SmartEvent Server.



Item	Description	Purpose
	-	Log data flow
	-	Event data flow
1	Check Point Security Gateway	Sends logs to the Log Server.
2	Log Server	Stores logs.
3	SmartEvent Correlation Unit	Identifies events: Analyzes each log entry from a Log Server, and looks for patterns according to the installed <i>Event Policy</i> . The logs contain data from Check Point products and certain third-party devices. When a threat pattern is identified, the SmartEvent Correlation Unit forwards the <i>event</i> to the SmartEvent Server.

Item	Description	Purpose
4	SmartEvent Server	 The SmartEvent Server: Indexes logs for SmartView Defines the event policy Manages correlation units Note - On a Multi-Domain Server, after you define the Global SmartEvent Server object in the Global Domain, you must assign a Global Policy to all Domain Servers, for the Domain Server administrators to be able to log in to the SmartEvent Server.
5	Events database	Stores events. Located on the SmartEvent Server.
6	SmartEvent client	 Shows the received events. Uses the clients to manage events (for example: to filter and close events), fine-tunes, and installs the Event Policy. The clients are: SmartConsole SmartView Web Application

The SmartEvent components can be installed on one computer (that is, a standalone deployment) or multiple computers and sites (a distributed deployment). To handle higher volumes of logging activity, we recommend a distributed deployment. Each SmartEvent Correlation Unit can analyze logs from more than one Log Server or Domain Log Server.

SmartEvent Correlation Unit

The SmartEvent Correlation Unit analyzes the log entries and identifies events from them. During analysis, the SmartEvent Correlation Unit:

- Marks log entries that are not stand-alone events, but can be part of a larger pattern to be identified later.
- Takes a log entry that meets one of the criteria set in the Events policy, and generates an event.
- Takes a new log entry that is part of a group of items. Together, all these items make up a security event. The SmartEvent Correlation Unit adds it to an ongoing event.
- Discards log entries that do not meet event criteria.

SmartEvent Correlation Unit High Availability

Multiple correlation units can read logs from the same Log Servers. That way, the units provide redundancy if one of them fails. The events that the Correlation Units detect are duplicated in the SmartEvent database. But these events can be disambiguated if you filter them with the **Detected By field** in the Event Query definition. The **Detected By field** specifies which SmartEvent Correlation Unit detected the event.

The SmartView Web Application

The SmartView Web Application is one of the SmartEvent clients that you can use to analyze events that occur in your environment. Use the SmartView Web Application to see an overview of the security information for your environment. It has the same event monitoring and analysis views as SmartConsole. The convenience is that you do not have to install a client.

To log in to SmartEvent using SmartView Web Application:

Browse to:

https://<IP Address of Security Management Server>/smartview/

or

https://<Host Name of Security Management Server>/smartview/

Note - The URL is case sensitive.

Configuring SmartEvent Policy and Settings

Opening the SmartEvent GUI Client

Use the Policy tab of the SmartEvent GUI client to configure and customize the events that define the SmartEvent Policy.

To open the SmartEvent GUI client:

- 1. In SmartConsole, from the left navigation panel, click the Logs & Monitor view.
- 2. At the top, click + to open a new tab.
- 3. In the bottom section External Apps, click SmartEvent Settings & Policy.

Policy Tab

Define the Event **Policy** in the Event **Policy** tab. Most configuration steps occur in the **Policy** tab. You define system components, such as SmartEvent Correlation Unit, lists of blocked IP addresses and other general settings.

The types of events that SmartEvent can detect are listed here, and sorted into a number of categories. To change each event, change the default thresholds and set Automated Responses. You can also disable events.

The Policy tab has these sections:

- Selector Tree The navigation pane.
- Detail pane The settings of each item in the Selector Tree.
- **Description pane -** A description of the selected item.

You can edit the event policy in one of these ways:

- Fine-tune the Event Policy.
- Change the existing Event Definition to see the events that interest you in "Modifying Event Definitions" on page 150.
- Create new Event Definitions to see the events that are not included in the existing definitions.

Save Event Policy

Modifications to the Event Policy do not take effect until saved on the SmartEvent Server and installed to the SmartEvent Correlation Unit.

To enable changes made to the Event Policy:

- 1. Click **Menu > File > Save**.
- 2. Click Actions > Install Event Policy.

Revert Changes

You can undo changes to the Event Policy, if they were not saved.

To undo changes: click File > Revert Changes.

Event Definitions and General Settings

The **Selector tree** is divided into two branches: **Event Policy** and **General Settings**. The events detectable by SmartEvent are organized by category in the **Event Policy** branch. Select an event definition to show its configurable properties in the **Detail** pane, and a description of the event in the **Description** pane. Clear the property to remove this event type from the Event Policy the next time the Event Policy is installed.

The **General Settings** branch contains **Initial Settings**. For example: To define SmartEvent Correlation Unit, which is typically used for the initial configuration. Click a **General Settings** item to show its configurable properties in the Detail pane.

For details on specified attacks or events, refer to the Event Definition Detail pane.

Event Definition Parameters

When an event definition is selected, its configurable elements appear in the **Detail** pane, and a description of the event is displayed in the **Description** pane.

These are the usual types of configurable elements:

- Thresholds, such as Detect the event when more than x connections were detected over y seconds
- Severity Informational, Low, Medium, High, or Critical.
- "Automatic Reactions" on page 131 such as Block Source or External Script.
- "Exceptions" on page 142.
- Time Object, such as to issue an event if the following occurs outside the following Working Hours (see "Working Hours" on page 141).

Not all of these elements appear for every Event Definition. After you install and run SmartEvent for a short time, you will discover which of these elements need to be fine-tuned per Event Definition.

For configuration information regarding most objects in **General Settings**, see "System Administration" on page 166.

Modifying Event Definitions

SmartEvent constantly takes data from your Log Servers, and searches for patterns in all the network chatter that enters your system.

Depending on the levels set in each Event Definition, the number of events detected can be high. But only a portion of those events can be meaningful. You can change the thresholds and other criteria of an event, to reduce the number of false alarms.

Event Threshold

The Event Threshold allows you to modify the limits that, when exceeded, indicate that an event occurred. Limits include the number of logs, and the timeframe in which they occurred:

Detect the event when more than $X \log x$ were detected over a period of Y seconds.

To decrease the number of false alarms based on a particular event, increase the number of logs and/or the timeframe for them to occur.

Severity

To modify the severity of an event, select a severity level from the drop-down list.

If the event is based on Threat Prevention logs, the event gets the severity from the protection type, not from the severity configured here.

To overwrite the severity:

- 1. Go to **SmartEvent > Policy**.
- 2. Select an event and right-click > Select Properties.

The Edit Event Definition window opens.

- 3. In the Event Format tab, select Determine event's display name and severity from event logs.
- 4. Click **Menu > File > Save**.
- 5. Click Actions > Install Event Policy.

Automatic Reactions

When detected, an event can activate an Automatic Reaction. The SmartEvent administrator can create and configure one Automatic Reaction, or many, according to the needs of the system.

For example: A Mail Reaction can be defined to tell the administrator of events to which it is applied. You can create multiple Automatic Mail Reactions to tell a different responsible party for each type of event.

Automatic Reaction Types

- Mail Send an email when the event occurs. See "Creating an Automatic Reaction "Mail"" on the next page.
- SNMP Trap Send an SNMP Trap when the event occurs. See "Creating an Automatic Reaction "SNMP Trap" on page 133.
- Block Source Instruct the Security Gateway to block the source IP address from which this event was detected for a configurable timeframe. See "Creating an Automatic Reaction "Block Source" on page 135.
- Block Event activity Instruct the Security Gateway to block a distributed attack that emanates from multiple sources, or attacks multiple destinations for a configurable timeframe. See "Creating an Automatic Reaction "Block Event Activity"" on page 136.
- External Script Run a user-cretated script when the event occurs. See "Creating an Automatic Reaction "External Script"" on page 137.

Creating an Automatic Reaction "Mail"

The Automatic Reaction "Mail" sends an email when the event occurs.

- 1. In SmartConsole, from the left navigation panel, click the Logs & Events view.
- 2. At the top, click + to open a new tab.
- 3. In the bottom section External Apps, click SmartEvent Settings & Policy.
- 4. Click General Settings > Objects > Automatic Reactions.
- 5. Click Add > Mail.
- 6. In the Name field, enter a significant name.
- 7. Optional: In the Comment field, enter a significant text.
- 8. In the Mail Parameters section:
 - a. In the From field, enter the applicable email address.
 - b. In the **To** field, enter the applicable email addresses.

To add multiple recipients, separate each email address with a semi-colon.

c. In the Cc field, enter the applicable email addresses.

To add multiple recipients, separate each email address with a semi-colon.

d. In the Subject field, enter the applicable email subject.

Note - The **Subject** field has the default variables of **[EventNumber]** - **[Severity]** - **[Name]**. These variables automatically add to the mail subject the event number, severity, and name of the event that triggered this reaction.

9. In the **Mail Server** section, in the **Outgoing mail server (SMTP)** field, enter the IP address or FQDN of your SMTP server.

Important - The SmartEvent Server must be able to reach your SMTP server. If you configure an FQDN, the DNS servers you configured on the SmartEvent Server must be able to resolve this FQDN.

- 10. Click Save.
- 11. Click **Menu > File > Save**.
- 12. Click Menu > Actions > Install Event Policy.

Creating an Automatic Reaction "SNMP Trap"

The Automatic Reaction "SNMP Trap" sends an SNMP Trap when the event occurs.

- 1. In SmartConsole, from the left navigation panel, click the Logs & Events view.
- 2. At the top, click + to open a new tab.
- 3. In the bottom section External Apps, click SmartEvent Settings & Policy.
- 4. Click General Settings > Objects > Automatic Reactions.
- 5. Click Add > SNMP Trap.
- 6. In the Name field, enter a significant name.
- 7. Optional: In the Comment field, enter a significant text.
- 8. In the SNMP Trap Parameters section:
 - a. In the Host field, enter the IP address or FQDN of your SMTP server.
 - Important The SmartEvent Server must be able to reach your SMTP server. If you configure an FQDN, the DNS servers you configured on the SmartEvent Server must be able to resolve this FQDN.
 - b. In the **Message** field, enter the applicable text. If this field is empty, then the SmartEvent Server sends the text of the event.
 - c. In the OID field, enter the applicable SNMP OID.

This OID must be defined in the \$CPDIR/lib/snmp/chkpnt.mib file or in the \$CPDIR/lib/snmp/chkpnt-trap.mib file that is located on the SmartEvent Server.

If this field is empty, then the SmartEvent Server uses the OID
1.3.6.1.4.1.2620.1.1.11(
iso.org.dod.internet.private.enterprises.checkpoint.products
.fw.fwEvent)

- d. In the **Community name** field, enter the applicable SNMP Community name.
- 9. Click Save.
- 10. Click Menu > File > Save.
- 11. Click Menu > Actions > Install Event Policy.

Notes:

- The built-in command send snmp on the SmartEvent Server send the SNMP Trap.
- When the automatic reaction occurs, the SNMP Trap is sent as a 256 byte DisplayString text.

If the OID type is not text, the message is not sent.

• You can send event fields in the SNMP Trap message.

Possible fields for the "seam_event" table

AdditionalInfo varchar(1024) AutoReactionStatus varchar(1024) Category varchar(1024) **DetectedBy integer DetectionTime integer Direction integer** DueDate integer EndTime integer EventNumber integer FollowUp integer IsLast integer LastUpdateTime integer MaxNumOfConnections integer Name varchar(1024), NumOfAcceptedConnections integer NumOfRejectedConnections integer NumOfUpdates integer ProductCategory varchar(1024) ProductName varchar(1024)

Remarks varchar(1024)

RuleID varchar(48)

Severity integer

StartTime integer

State integer

TimeInterval integer TotalNumOfConnections varchar(20) User varchar(1024) Uuid varchar(48) aba_customer varchar(1024) jobID varchar(48) policyRuleID varchar(48)

Creating an Automatic Reaction "Block Source"

The Automatic Reaction "**Block Source**" instructs the Security Gateway to block the source IP address from which this event was detected for a configurable timeframe.

- 1. In SmartConsole, from the left navigation panel, click the Logs & Events view.
- 2. At the top, click + to open a new tab.
- 3. In the bottom section External Apps, click SmartEvent Settings & Policy.
- 4. Click General Settings > Objects > Automatic Reactions.
- 5. Click Add > Block Source.
- 6. In the Name field, enter a significant name.
- 7. Optional: In the Comment field, enter a significant text.
- 8. In the **Blocking Timeout** section, select for how long to block the source:
 - Next 10 Minutes
 - Next Hour
 - Next Day
 - Next Week
 - Enter a number from 1 to 32767.
- 9. Click Save.
- 10. Click **Menu > File > Save**.
- 11. Click Menu > Actions > Install Event Policy.

Creating an Automatic Reaction "Block Event Activity"

The Automatic Reaction "**Block Event activity**" instructs the Security Gateway to block a distributed attack that emanates from multiple sources, or attacks multiple destinations for a configurable timeframe.

- 1. In SmartConsole, from the left navigation panel, click the Logs & Events view.
- 2. At the top, click + to open a new tab.
- 3. In the bottom section External Apps, click SmartEvent Settings & Policy.
- 4. Click General Settings > Objects > Automatic Reactions.
- 5. Click Add > Block Event Activity.
- 6. In the Name field, enter a significant name.
- 7. Optional: In the Comment field, enter a significant text.
- 8. In the **Blocking Timeout** section, select for how long to block the source:
 - Next 10 Minutes
 - Next Hour
 - Next Day
 - Next Week
 - Enter a number from 1 to 32767.
- 9. From the drop-down list, select the number of minutes to block this source.
- 10. Click Save.
- 11. Click **Menu > File > Save**.
- 12. Click Menu > Actions > Install Event Policy.

Creating an Automatic Reaction "External Script"

The Automatic Reaction "External Script" runs a script that you provide.

1. Create the required shell script for Bash or C-Shell.

Guidelines for creating the shell script

- Run the script manually on the SmartEvent Server and make sure it works as expected.
- Make sure the script runs for no longer than 10 minutes.

Otherwise, the SmartEvent Server will terminate this script.

Use the event fields in the script:

To refer to the event in the script, define this environment variable:

EVENT=\$(cat)

and use \$EVENT

Use line editor commands like awk or sed to parse the event and refer to specific fields. You can print the SEVENT one time to see its format.

The format of the event content is a name-value set - a structured set of fields that have the form:

```
(name: value ;* );
```

where name is a string and value is either free text until a semicolon, or a nested name-value set.

This is a sample event:

```
(Name: Check Point administrator credential guessing;
RuleID:
{F182D6BC-A0AA-444a-9F31-C0C22ACA2114}; Uuid:
<42135c9c,00000000,2e1510ac,131c07b6>; NumOfUpdates: 0;
IsLast: 0;
StartTime: 16Feb2015 16:45:45; EndTime: Not Completed;
DetectionTime:
16Feb2015 16:45:48; LastUpdateTime: 0; TimeInterval:
600;
MaxNumOfConnections: 3; TotalNumOfConnections: 3;
DetectedBy: 2886735150;
Origin: (IP: 192.0.2.4; repetitions: 3; countryname:
United States;
hostname: theHost) ; ProductName: SmartDashboard; User:
XYZ; Source:
(hostname: theHost; repetitions: 3; IP: 192.0.2.4;
countryname: United
States) ; Severity: Critical; EventNumber: EN00000184;
State: 0;
NumOfRejectedConnections: 0; NumOfAcceptedConnections:
0);
```

2. Put the script on the SmartEvent Server:

- a. Connect to the command line on the SmartEvent Server.
- b. Log in to the Expert mode.
- c. In the directory \$RTDIR/bin, create the directory "ext_commands": mkdir -v \$RTDIR/bin/ext commands
- d. Uplod the shell script file to the SmartEvent Server to the directory \$RTDIR/bin/ext_commands/ (or to a nested directory in that directory).

The path and script name must not contain any spaces.

e. Assign the "execute" permissions to this script:

chmod -v +x \$RTDIR/bin/ext commands/<script filename>

f. Make sure to save the script in the UNIX format.

dos2unix \$RTDIR/bin/ext_commands/<script_filename>

- 3. In SmartConsole, from the left navigation panel, click the Logs & Events view.
- 4. At the top, click + to open a new tab.
- 5. In the bottom section External Apps, click SmartEvent Settings & Policy.
- 6. Click General Settings > Objects > Automatic Reactions.
- 7. Click Add > External Script.
- 8. In the Name field, enter a significant name.
- 9. In the **Command line** field, enter the relative path (relative to the directory \$RTDIR/bin/ext_commands/) and the name of the script.

Examples:

If the script is located in the directory \$RTDIR/bin/ext_commands/:

MyExternalScript.sh

If the script is located in the directory \$RTDIR/bin/ext_commands/ in a nested directory MyScripts:

MyScripts/MyExternalScript.sh

- 10. Optional: In the Comment field, enter a significant text.
- 11. Click Save.
- 12. Click **Menu > File > Save**.
- 13. Click Menu > Actions > Install Event Policy.

Assigning an Automatic Reaction to an Event

You can add an Automatic Reaction for SmartEvent to run when this type of event is detected.

- 1. In SmartConsole, from the left navigation panel, click the Logs & Events view.
- 2. At the top, click + to open a new tab.
- 3. In the bottom section External Apps, click SmartEvent Settings & Policy.
- 4. Click **Event Policy** > click the relevant event object.
- 5. In the Automatic Reactions field, click the icon [...].
- 6. Select the relevant Automatic Reactions and click **OK**.

If the relevant Automatic Reaction is not in this list, then click **Add new?**. See "Automatic Reaction Types" on page 131.

- 7. Click OK.
- 8. Click **Menu > File > Save**.
- 9. Click Menu > Actions > Install Event Policy.

Adding more fields to an Event

- 1. In the SmartEvent GUI client, in the **Policy** tab, right-click the event, click **Properties**.
- 2. At the top, click the Event Format tab.
- 3. In the **Display** column, select the **Event fields** to have in the Event.
- 4. Click **Menu > File > Save**.
- 5. Click Menu > Actions > Install Event Policy.

Working Hours

Working Hours are used to detect unauthorized attempts to access protected systems and other forbidden operations after-hours. To set the **Regular Working Hours** for an event, select a **Time Object** that you have configured from the drop-down list.

Part 1 - Create a Time Object:

- 1. In SmartConsole, from the left navigation panel, click the Logs & Monitor view.
- 2. At the top, click + to open a new tab.
- 3. In the bottom section External Apps, click SmartEvent Settings & Policy.
- 4. Click General Settings Objects > Time Objects.
- 5. Click Add.
- 6. In the Name field, enter a significant name.
- 7. Optional: In the Description field, enter a significant text.
- 8. Select the required days and times.
- 9. Click Save.

Part 2 - Assign a Time Object to an event:

1. In the **Event Policy** folder, select and click the relevant event object that supports the **Regular Working Hours** field.

For example, in the **Unauthorized Entry** event category, click the event **User Login at irregular hours**.

2. In the **Regular Working Hours** field, select the applicable Time object.

Part 3 - Install Event Policy

- 1. Click **Menu > File > Save**.
- 2. Click Menu > Actions > Install Event Policy.

Exceptions

Exceptions allow an event to be independently configured for the sources, destination, service and other parameters depending on the event type.

For example, if the event Scans > Port Scan from Internal Network is set to detect an event when 30 port scans occur within 60 seconds, you can also define that two port scans detected from host A within 10 seconds of each other is also an event.

To add an exception:

- 1. In SmartConsole, from the left navigation panel, click the Logs & Monitor view.
- 2. At the top, click + to open a new tab.
- 3. In the bottom section External Apps, click SmartEvent Settings & Policy.
- 4. In the section **Apply the following exceptions to the event definition**, click **Add** (on the right side, move the scrollbar down to see this section).
- 5. In the section Exception match:
 - a. In the **Source** field:
 - i. Select the checkbox.
 - ii. On the right side, click [...].
 - iii. Select the required object.

Note - If you do not see the host object listed, you may need to create it in SmartEvent (see "System Administration" on page 166).

- iv. Click OK.
- b. In the **Destination** field:
 - i. Select the checkbox.
 - ii. On the right side, click [...].
 - iii. Select the required object.

Note - If you do not see the host object listed, you may need to create it in SmartEvent (see "*System Administration*" on page 166).

- iv. Click OK.
- c. In the Connection occurred at least field, enter the relevant number of times.
- d. In the times over a period of field, enter the relevant number of seconds.
- 6. In the section Severity and Reactions:

- a. In the **Severity** field, select the required level.
- b. In the **Reactions** section, select the application option:
 - Default.
 - Specific > click [...] > select or add the relevant Automatic Reactions > click OK (see "Automatic Reactions" on page 131).
- c. Optional: In the Comment field, enter a significant text.
- 7. Click OK.
- 8. Click **Menu > File > Save**.
- 9. Click Menu > Actions > Install Event Policy.

High Level Overview of Event Identification

Events are detected by the SmartEvent Correlation Unit. The SmartEvent Correlation Unit scans logs for criteria that match an Event Definition.

SmartEvent uses these procedures to identify these events:

Matching a Log Against Global Exclusions

When the SmartEvent Correlation Unit reads a log, it first checks if the log matches all defined **Global Exclusions**. Global Exclusions (defined on the **Policy** tab > **EventPolicy** > **Global Exclusions**) direct SmartEvent to ignore logs that are not expected to contribute to an event.

If the log matches a Global Exclusion, it is discarded by the system. If not, the SmartEvent Correlation Unit starts to match it against each Event Definition.

Matching a Log Against Each Event Definition

Each **Event Definition** contains a filter which is comprised of a number of criteria that must be found in all matching logs. The criteria are divided by product: The **Event Definition** can include a number of different products, but each product has its own criterion.

Event Definition "A"

Product	Endpoint Security	Security Gateway	
Action	block	drop, reject	
Type	firewall	N/A	
Port	80 – 84	80 – 84	
Protocol	TCP	TCP	

To match the **Event Definition "A"**, a log from Endpoint Security must match the **Action**, **Event Type**, **Port**, and **Protocol** values listed in the Endpoint Security column. A log from a Security Gateway must match the values listed in its column.

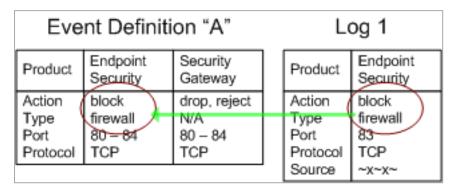
SmartEvent divides this procedure into two steps. The SmartEvent Correlation Unit first checks if the Product value in the log matches one of the permitted **Product** values of an **Event Definition**.

Event Definition "A"			 Log 1	
Product	Endpoint Security	Security Gateway	Product (Endpoint Security
Action Type Port Protocol	block firewall 80 – 84 TCP	drop, reject N/A 80 – 84 TCP	Action Type Port Protocol	~X~X~ ~X~X~ ~X~X~ ~X~X~

If Log 1 did not contain a permitted **Product** value, the SmartEvent Correlation Unit compares the log against **Event Definition "B"**, and so on. If the log fails to match against an **Event Definition**, it is discarded.

The SmartEvent Correlation Unit checks if the log contains the Product-specific criteria to match the **Event Definition**. For example: The product Endpoint Security generates logs that involve the Firewall, Spyware, Malicious Code Protection, and others. The log contains this information in the field **Event Type**. If an event is defined to match on Endpoint Security logs with the event type **Firewall**, an Endpoint Security log with Event Type "Spyware" fails against the Event Definition filter. Other criteria can be specified to the Product.

In our example, Log 1 matched **Event Definition "A"** with a permitted product value. The SmartEvent Correlation Unit examines if the log contains the necessary criteria for an Endpoint Security log to match.



If the criteria do not match, the SmartEvent Correlation Unit continues to compare the log criteria to other event definitions.

Creating an Event Candidate

When a log matches the criteria, it is added to an **Event Candidate**.

Event candidates let SmartEvent track logs until an event threshold is crossed, at which point an event is generated.

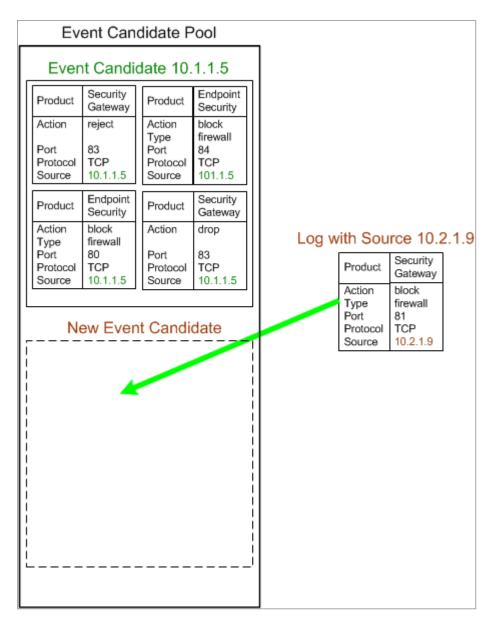
Event Candidate 10.1.1.5								
Product	Security Gateway	Product	Endpoint Security					
Action Port Protocol Source	reject 83 TCP 10.1.1.5	Action Type Port Protocol Source	block firewall 84 TCP 10.1.1.5					
Product	Endpoint Security	Product	Security Gateway					
Action Type Port Protocol Source	block firewall 80 TCP 10.1.1.5	Action Port Protocol Source	drop 83 TCP 10.1.1.5					

The logs can come from different log servers and be correlated in the same event.

The Event Candidate tracks logs until the criteria is matched (the criteria is the number of logs in a declared number of seconds).

Each **Event Definition** can have multiple event candidates, each of which keeps track of logs grouped by equivalent properties. In the figure above the logs that create the event candidate have a common source value. They are dropped, blocked or rejected by a Security Gateway. They are grouped together because the Event Definition is designed to detect this type of activity that originates from one source. Depending on the event declaration, if there is a grouping declaration on the source field, it will create a new event candidate.

When a log matches the event definition, but has properties different than those of the existing event candidates, a new event candidate is created. This event candidate is added to what can be thought of as the **Event Candidate Pool**.

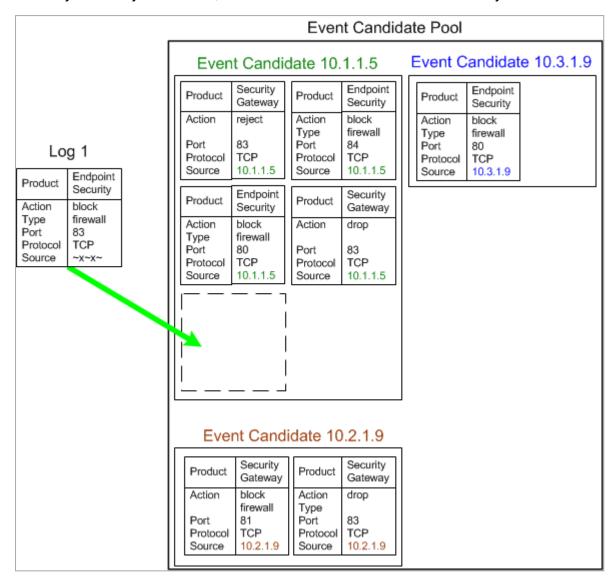


By default, SmartEvent creates a new event candidate for a log with a different source.

To customize the default behavior:

- 1. In SmartConsole, from the left navigation panel, click the Logs & Monitor view.
- 2. At the top, click + to open a new tab.
- 3. In the bottom section External Apps, click SmartEvent Settings & Policy.
- 4. Right-click an event > click **Properties**.
- 5. At the top, click the **Count logs** tab.
- 6. In the section The new even is triggered by, select the applicable option:
 - a single log
 - multiple logs over a period of time
- 7. In the Accumulate additional logs that contain the same filed:
 - a. Click [...].
 - b. In the Event Definition Wizard window, select the required log fields and click OK.
- 8. Click the **Advanced** button:
 - a. In the Keep event open for field, enter the required number of seconds.
 - b. In the **Update event data after** field, enter the required number of seconds.
 - c. Click OK.
- 9. At the top, click the Name tab.
- 10. In the **Name** field, enter a different name.
- 11. Click Save as.
- 12. The modified event is saved in the folder **Event policy > User Defined Events**.
- 13. Click **Menu > File > Save**.
- 14. Click Menu > Actions > Install Event Policy.

To illustrate more, an event defined detects a high rate of blocked connections. SmartEvent tracks the number of blocked connections for each Security Gateway, and the logs of the blocked traffic at each Security Gateway forms an event candidate. When the threshold of blocked connection logs from a Security Gateway is surpassed, that Security Gateway event candidate becomes an event. While this Event Definition creates one event candidate for each Security Gateway monitored, other Event Definitions can create many more.



The Event Candidate Pool is a dynamic environment, with new logs added and older logs discarded when they have exceeded an Event Definition time threshold.

Matching a Log Against Event Exclusion

Before SmartEvent generates logs for a specific event, it checks to see if this event candidate attributes are listed in the exclusions table or not. Event Exclusions are defined on the **Policy** tab > **Event Policy** > **Event Exclusions** according to the attributes selected.

If an attribute matches an Event Exclusion, it is discarded by the system (an event is not generated). If not, the SmartEvent Correlation Unit starts to match it against each Event Definition.

Event Generation

When a candidate becomes an event, the SmartEvent Correlation Unit forwards the event to the Event Database. But to discover an event does not mean that SmartEvent stops to track logs related to it. The SmartEvent Correlation Unit adds matching logs to the event as long as they continue to arrive during the event threshold. To keep the event *open* condenses what can appear as many instances of the same event to one, and provides accurate, up-to-date information as to the start and end time of the event.

Modifying Event Definitions

SmartEvent constantly takes data from your Log Servers, and searches for patterns in all the network chatter that enters your system.

Depending on the levels set in each Event Definition, the number of events detected can be high. But only a portion of those events can be meaningful. You can change the thresholds and other criteria of an event, to reduce the number of false alarms.

Creating a User-Defined Event

To create New Event Definitions, right-click an existing Event Definition, or use the **Actions** menu:

Right- Click	Menu "Actions"	Description
New	New Custom Event	Launches the Event Definition Wizard, which allows you to select how to base the event: on an existing Event Definition, or from scratch.
Save As	Save Event As	Creates an Event Definition based on the properties of the highlighted Event Definition. When you select Save As , the system prompts you to save the selected Event Definition with a new name for later editing. You can also access Save As from the Properties window.

All User Defined Events are saved at **Policy** tab > **Event Policy** > **User Defined Events**. When an Event Definition exists it can be modified through the **Properties** window, available by right-click and from the **Actions** menu.

Creating a New Event Definition

You can edit all events, not only user-defined events. If you change a predefined event, the result is saved as a new user defined event.

To create a new event definition:

- 1. In SmartConsole, from the left navigation panel, click the Logs & Monitor view.
- 2. At the top, click + to open a new tab.
- 3. In the bottom section External Apps, click SmartEvent Settings & Policy.
- 4. From the **Menu > Actions** menu, select **New Custom Event**.

The Event Definition Wizard opens.

- 5. In the Step 1 of 7 window:
 - a. Select that is based on an existing event.
 - b. Select an event that has equivalent properties to the event you want to create.
 - c. Click Next.
- 6. In the Step 2 of 7 window:

- a. In the Name field, enter a significant name.
- b. Optional: In the Description field, enter a significant text.
- c. In the Severity field, select the required level.
- d. Click Next.
- 7. In the Step 3 of 7 window:
 - a. Slect the applicable option that generates the event:
 - A single log Frequently depicts an event, such as a log from a virus scanner that reports that a virus has been found.
 - Multiple logs Required if the event can only be identified as a result of a combination of multiple logs, such as a High Connection Rate.
 - b. Click Next.
- 8. In the Step 4 of 7 window:
 - a. Select the required products. You can add a new product name.
 - b. Click Next.
- 9. In the Step 5 of 7 window:
 - a. Select the applicable option:
 - Edit all product filters
 - Edit only newly selected product filters
 - b. Click Next.
- 10. In the Step 6.x of 7 windows:
 - a. At the top of this window, pay attention to the **Product**.
 - b. In the left panel Available Log Field, click the required field to select it.
 - c. Click Add to edit the filter.
 - d. Click Add to configure the required value for the selected field > enter the value > click OK.
 - e. In the top right corner, you can select **Not** to negate the configured filter.
 - f. Click OK.
 - g. In the right panel **Match**, select the required option **All Conditions** or **Any Conditions**.

- h. To edit an added Log field, double-click it.
- i. Click Next.
- 11. In the Step 7 of 7 window:
 - a. In the fields Detect the event when at least <u>logs occurred over a period of</u> <u>seconds</u>, configure the required values.
 - b. The option Each event definition may have multiple Event Candidates existing simultaneously controls whether SmartEvent creates distinct Event Candidates based on a field (or set of fields) that you select below.

Select the field(s) by which distinct Event Candidates will be created allows you to set the field (or set of fields) that are used to differentiate between Event Candidates.

- 12. Click Finish.
- 13. The modified event is saved in the folder **Event policy > User Defined Events**.
- 14. Click Menu > File > Save.
- 15. Click Menu > Actions > Install Event Policy.

Customizing a User-Defined Event

Customizing a user-defined event:

- 1. In SmartConsole, from the left navigation panel, click the Logs & Monitor view.
- 2. At the top, click + to open a new tab.
- 3. In the bottom section External Apps, click SmartEvent Settings & Policy.
- 4. In the folder **Event Policy** > **User Defined Events**, right-click a User-Defined Event and click **Properties**.
- 5. On the **Name** tab:
 - a. In the Name field, enter a significant name.
 - b. Optional: In the Description field, enter a significant text.
 - c. In the Severity field, select the required level.
- 6. On the **Filter** tab:
 - a. In the left panel Event Products, select the required product.
 - b. In the middle panel Log Fields, select the required field.

If the necessary field does not appear, click **Show more fields** > click the applicable option **Existing field** or **New field** > select the existing field or configure the new field > click **OK**.

- c. Click Add to configure the required value for the selected field > enter the value > click OK.
- d. In the top right corner, you can select **Not** to negate the configured filter.
- e. Click OK.
- f. In the right panel Match, select the required option All Conditions or Any Conditions.
- g. To edit an added Log field, double-click it.
- h. Select if the filter matches on All Conditions or Any Conditions.
- 7. On the Count log tab:
 - a. In the fields Detect the event when at least <u>logs occurred over a period of</u> <u>seconds</u>, configure the required values.

b. The option Each event definition may have multiple Event Candidates existing simultaneously controls whether SmartEvent creates distinct Event Candidates based on a field (or set of fields) that you select below.

Select the field(s) by which distinct Event Candidates will be created allows you to set the field (or set of fields) that are used to differentiate between Event Candidates.

- c. The option **Use unique values of the** ____ **field when counting logs** directs SmartEvent to count unique values of the specified field when determining whether the Event Threshold has been surpassed. When this option is not selected, SmartEvent counts the total number of logs received.
- d. Click the Advanced button:
 - i. In the Keep event open for field, enter the required number of seconds.
 - ii. In the Update event data after field, enter the required number of seconds.
 - iii. Click OK.
- 8. On the Event Format tab:

When an event is generated, information about the event is presented in the **Event Detail** pane.

On this page you can specify if the information will be added to the detailed pane and from which Log Field the information is taken.

You can clear it in the **Display** column. The Event Field will not be populated.

- 9. On the GUI representation tab:
 - a. Select the **Threshold section** option to show the number of logs that must matched to create the event. This is usually not shown for one log events and shown for multiple log events.
 - b. Select the **Exclude section** option to specify the log fields that appear when you add an event exclusion.
 - c. Select the **Exception section** option to specify the log fields that appear when you add an event exception.
- 10. Click **OK**.
- 11. Click Menu > File > Save.
- 12. Click Menu > Actions > Install Event Policy.

Eliminating False Positives

Services that Generate Events

Some types of services are characterized by a high quantity of traffic that can be misidentified as events. These are examples of services and protocols that can potentially generate events:

- Software that does a routine scan of the network to make sure that everything runs correctly. Configuration of SmartEvent to exclude this source from a scan event eliminates a source of false positive events.
- High connection rate on a web server. Set SmartEvent to allow a higher connection rate for each minute on a busy web server, or to exclude this source from a scan event.

Common Events by Service

The information in this table provides a list of server types where high activity is frequently used.

To change the Event Policy, adjust event thresholds and add Exclusions for servers and services.

You can decrease more the quantity of false positives detected.

Server Type	Category	Event Name	Sourc e	Dest	Service	Reason
SNMP	Scans	IP sweep from internal network	Any	Any	SNMP-read	Hosts that query other hosts
DNS Servers	Scans	IP sweep from internal network	DNS server s	-	DNS	Inter-DNS servers updates
	Denial of Service (DoS)	High connectio n rate on internal host on service	Any	DNS server s	DNS	DNS requests and inter- DNS servers updates

Common events by service:

Server Type	Category	Event Name	Sourc e	Dest	Service	Reason
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal network	Any	Any	DNS	DNS requests and inter- DNS servers updates
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal network on service	Any	Any	DNS	DNS requests and inter- DNS servers updates
	Anomalie s	Abnormal activity on service	Any	Any	DNS	DNS requests and inter- DNS servers updates
NIS Servers	Scans	Port scan from internal network	NIS server s	Any	-	Multiple NIS queries
	Denial of Service (DoS)	High connectio n rate on internal host on service	Any	NIS server s	NIS	NIS queries
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal network	Any	Any	NIS	NIS queries

Server Type	Category	Event Name	Sourc e	Dest	Service	Reason
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal network on service	Any	Any	NIS	NIS queries
	Anomalie s	Abnormal activity on service	Any	Any	NIS	NIS queries
LDAP Servers	Denial of Service (DoS)	High connectio n rate on internal host on service	Any	LDAP server s	LDAP	LDAP requests
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal network	Any	LDAP server s	LDAP	LDAP requests
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal network on service	Any	LDAP server s	LDAP	LDAP requests
	Anomalie s	Abnormal activity on service	Any	LDAP server s	LDAP	LDAP requests

Server Type	Category	Event Name	Sourc e	Dest	Service	Reason
HTTP Proxy Servers - Hosts To Proxy Server	Denial of Service (DoS)	High connectio n rate on internal host on service	Any	Proxy server s	HTTP:8080	Hosts connection s to Proxy servers
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal network	Any	Proxy server s	HTTP:8080	Hosts connection s to Proxy servers
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal hosts on service	Any	Proxy server s	HTTP:8080	Hosts connection s to Proxy servers
	Anomalie s	Abnormal activity on service	Any	Proxy server s	HTTP:8080	Hosts connection s to Proxy servers
HTTP Proxy Servers - Out to the Web	Scans	IP sweep from internal network	Proxy server s	Any	HTTP/ HTTPS	Proxy servers connection s out to various sites
	Denial of Service (DoS)	High connectio n rate on internal host on service	Proxy server s	Any	HTTP/ HTTPS	Proxy servers connection s out to various sites

Server Type	Category	Event Name	Sourc e	Dest	Service	Reason
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal network	Proxy server s	Any	HTTP/ HTTPS	Proxy servers connection s out to various sites
		High connectio n rate from internal hosts on service	Proxy server s	Any	HTTP/ HTTPS	Proxy servers connection s out to various sites
	Anomalie s	Abnormal activity on service	Proxy server s	Any	HTTP/ HTTPS	Proxy servers connection s out to various sites
UFP Servers	Denial of Service (DoS)	High connectio n rate on internal host on service	Any	UFP server s	Any/UFP by vendor	Firewall connection s to UFP servers
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal network	Any	UFP server s	Any/UFP by vendor	Firewall connection s to UFP servers
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal hosts on service	Any	UFP server s	Any/UFP by vendor	Firewall connection s to UFP servers

Server Type	Category	Event Name	Sourc e	Dest	Service	Reason
	Anomalie s	Abnormal activity on service	Any	UFP server s	Any/UFP by vendor	Firewall connection s to UFP servers
CVP Servers Request	Denial of Service (DoS)	High connectio n rate on internal host on service	Any	CVP server s	Any/CVP by vendor	Firewall connection s to CVP servers
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal network	Any	CVP server s	Any/CVP by vendor	Firewall connection s to CVP servers
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal hosts on service	Any	CVP server s	Any/CVP by vendor	Firewall connection s to CVP servers
	Anomalie s	Abnormal activity on service	Any	CVP server s	Any/CVP by vendor	Firewall connection s to CVP servers
CVP Servers Replies	Scans	Port scans from internal network	CVP server s	Any	-	Multiple CVP replies to same GW
	Scans	IP sweep from internal network	CVP server s	-	CVP	CVP replies to multiple GWs

Server Type	Category	Event Name	Sourc e	Dest	Service	Reason
	Denial of Service (DoS)	High connectio n rate on internal host on service	CVP server s	Any	Any/CVP by vendor	CVP replies
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal network	CVP server s	Any	Any/CVP by vendor	CVP replies
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal hosts on service	CVP server s	Any	Any/CVP by vendor	CVP replies
	Anomalie s	Abnormal activity on service	CVP server s	Any	Any/CVP by vendor	CVP replies
UA Server Request	Denial of Service (DoS)	High connectio n rate on internal host on service	Any	UA server s	uas-port (TCP:19191 TCP:19194)	Connectio ns to UA servers
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal network	Any	UA server s	(TCP:19191 TCP:19194)	Connectio ns to UA servers

Server Type	Category	Event Name	Sourc e	Dest	Service	Reason
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal hosts on service	Any	UA server s	uas-port (TCP:19191 TCP:19194)	Connectio ns to UA servers
	Anomalie s	Abnormal activity on service	Any	UA server s	uas-port (TCP:19191 TCP:19194)	Connectio ns to UA servers
UA Servers Replies	Scans	Port scans from internal network	UA server s	Any	-	Multiple UA replies to the same computer
	Scans	IP sweep from internal network	UA server s	Any	uas-port (TCP:19191 TCP:19194)	Multiple UA replies to multiple computers
	Denial of Service (DoS)	High connectio n rate on internal host on service	UA server s	Any	uas-port (TCP:19191 TCP:19194)	UA replies
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal network	UA server s	Any	uas-port (TCP:19191 TCP:19194)	UA replies
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal hosts on service	UA server s	Any	uas-port (TCP:19191 TCP:19194)	UA replies

Server Type	Category	Event Name	Sourc e	Dest	Service	Reason
	Anomalie s	Abnormal activity on service	UA server s	Any	uas-port (TCP:19191TCP:19 194)	UA replies
SMTP Servers	Scans	IP sweep from internal network	SMTP server s	-	SMTP	SMTP servers connection s out to various SMTP servers
	Denial of Service (DoS)	High connectio n rate on internal host on service	SMTP server s	Any	SMTP	SMTP servers connection s out to various SMTP servers
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal network	SMTP server s	Any	SMTP	SMTP servers connection s out to various SMTP servers
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal hosts on service	SMTP server s	Any	SMTP	SMTP servers connection s out to various SMTP servers
	Anomalie s	Abnormal activity on service	SMTP server s	Any	SMTP	SMTP servers connection s out to various SMTP servers

Server Type	Category	Event Name	Sourc e	Dest	Service	Reason
Anti- Virus Definitio n Servers	Scans	IP sweep from internal network	AV_ Defs server s	-	Any/AV by vendor	Anti-Virus definitions updates deploymen t
	Denial of Service (DoS)	High connectio n rate on internal host on service	AV_ Defs server s	-	Any/AV by vendor	Anti-Virus definitions updates deploymen t
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal network	AV_ Defs server s	-	Any/AV by vendor	Anti-Virus definitions updates deploymen t
	Anomalie s	High connectio n rate from internal hosts on service	AV_ Defs server s	-	Any/AV by vendor	Anti-Virus definitions updates deploymen t
	Anomalie s	Abnormal activity on service	AV_ Defs server s	-	Any/AV by vendor	Anti-Virus definitions updates deploymen t

System Administration

To maintain your SmartEvent system, you can do these tasks from the General Settings section of the **Policy** tab:

- Adding a SmartEvent Correlation Unit and Log Servers.
- Create offline jobs analyze historical log files (see "Importing Offline Log Files" on page 50).
- Adding objects to the Internal Network.
- Creating scripts to run as Automatic Reactions for certain events (see "Creating an" Automatic Reaction "External Script"" on page 137).
- Creating objects for use in filters.

Adding a Host or Network Object to SmartEvent

Network Objects are the objects that are synchronized from the Management Server database as well as user-defined additional objects. These objects from the Management Server are added to SmartEvent during the initial sync and updated at set intervals.



Best Practice - Add new Host and Network objects in SmartConsole and not in SmartEvent GUI.

- 1. In SmartConsole, from the left navigation panel, click the Logs & Monitor view.
- 2. At the top, click + to open a new tab.
- 3. In the bottom section External Apps, click SmartEvent Settings & Policy.
- 4. Click the folder General Settings > Objects > the object Network Objects.
- 5. Click Add > Host or Network.
- 6. Configure the object:
 - For a Host object:
 - In the Name field, enter a significant name.

You can enter a hostname if the SmartEvent Server can resolve this hostname.

In the IP Address field, enter the required host IP address.

If in the **Name** field, you entered a hostname, and the SmartEvent Server can resolve this hostname, then you can click Get Address.

• Optional: In the Comment field, enter a significant text.

- For a Network object:
 - In the Name field, enter a significant name.
 - In the Network Address field, enter the required network IP address.
 - In the Net Mask field, enter the required network mask.
 - Optional: In the Comment field, enter a significant text.
- 7. Click OK.
- 8. Click **Menu > File > Save**.
- 9. Click Menu > Actions > Install Event Policy.

Defining the Internal Network

Note - Some network objects are copied from the Management server to the SmartEvent Server during the the initial sync and updated afterwards. You cannot configure the internal network until the initial sync is complete.

To help SmartEvent conclude if events originated internally or externally, you must define the Internal Network.

The Internal Network defines hosts, networks, or groups that are part of the network behind the organization's perimeter.

These are the options to calculate the traffic direction:

- Incoming All the sources are external to the network and all destinations are internal.
- Outgoing All sources are in the network and all destinations are external.
- Internal Sources and destinations are all in the network.
- Other A mixture of internal and external values makes the result indeterminate.

To define the Internal Network:

- 1. In SmartConsole, from the left navigation panel, click the Logs & Monitor view.
- 2. At the top, click + to open a new tab.
- 3. In the bottom section External Apps, click SmartEvent Settings & Policy.
- 4. Click the folder General Settings > Initial Settings > the object Internal Network.
- 5. In the left panel **Not in Internal Network**, select one or more relevant objects (press and hold the CTRL key).

We recommend you add all internal **Network** objects, and not **Host** objects.

6. Click Add.

7. In the right panel **In Internal Network**, you can click **Add New** to add a new Host or Network object.

See "Adding a Host or Network Object to SmartEvent" on page 166.

- 8. Click **Menu > File > Save**.
- 9. Click Menu > Actions > Install Event Policy.

Monitoring Traffic and Connections

SmartView Monitor gives you a complete picture of network and security performance. Use it to respond quickly and efficiently to changes in Security Gateways, tunnels, remote users and traffic flow patterns or security activities.

SmartView Monitor is a high-performance network and security analysis system. This system helps you to establish work habits based on learned system resource patterns. Based on Check Point Security Management Architecture, SmartView Monitor provides a single, central interface, to monitor network activity and performance of Check Point Software Blades.

How SmartView Monitor Works

Data for the status of all Security Gateways in the system is collected by the Security Management Server and viewed in SmartView Monitor.

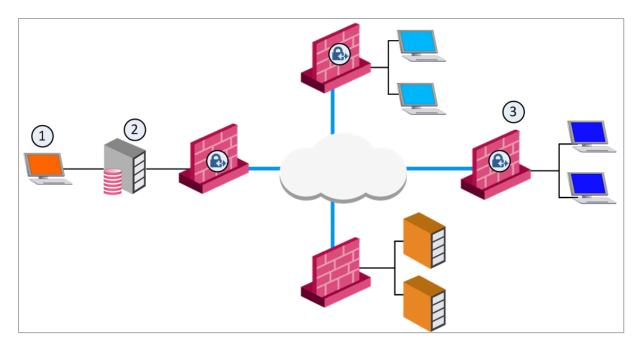
The data shows status for:

- Check Point Security Gateways
- OPSEC Gateways
- Check Point Software Blades

Gateway Status is the SmartView Monitor view, which shows all component status information.

A **Gateway Status** view shows a snapshot of all Software Blades, such as VPN and ClusterXL, and third party products (for example, OPSEC Gateways).

Gateway Status is similar in operation to the SNMP daemon that provides a mechanism to get data about Gateways in the system.



SIC is initialized between Security Gateways (3) (local and remote), and the Security Management Server (2). The Security Management Server then gets status data from the Software Blades with the AMON (Application Monitoring) protocol. SmartView Monitor (1) gets the data from the Security Management Server.

AMON Protocol Support

The Security Management Server acts as an AMON client. It collects data about installed Software Blades. Each Security Gateway, or any other OPSEC Gateway, which runs an AMON server, acts as the AMON server itself. The Gateway requests status updates from other components, such as the Firewall kernel and network servers. Requests are fetched at a defined interval.

An alternate source for status collection can be any AMON client, such as an OPSEC partner, which uses the AMON protocol.

The AMON protocol is SIC-based. It can collect data only after SIC is initialized.

Defining Status Fetch Frequency

The Security Management Server collects status data from the Security Gateways on a defined interval. The default is 60 seconds.

To set the Status Fetching Interval:

- 1. Open SmartConsole.
- 2. Open Global Properties > Log and Alert > Time Settings.
- 3. Enter the number of seconds in Status fetching interval.

To Start Monitoring

To open the monitoring views in SmartConsole:

- 1. From the **Gateways & Servers** view, select a Security Gateway.
- 2. Click Monitor.

The Device and License information window opens and shows:

- Device Status
- License Status
- System Counters
- Traffic

To open SmartView Monitor:

- 1. Open SmartConsole > Logs & Events.
- 2. Open the catalog (new tab).
- 3. Click Tunnel & User Monitoring.

Note - SmartView Monitor may fail to open if there are more than 15,000 objects configured in the management database on the Management Server.

SmartView Monitor Features

SmartView Monitor allows administrators to easily configure and monitor different aspects of network activities. You can see graphical from an integrated, intuitive interface.

Defined views include the most frequently used traffic, counter, tunnel, Security Gateway, and remote user information. For example, Check Point System Counters collect information on the status and activities of Check Point products (for example, VPN or NAT). With custom or defined views, administrators can drill-down the status of a specified Security Gateway and/or a segment of traffic. That way, administrators identify top bandwidth hosts that can influence network performance. If suspicious activity is detected, administrators can immediately apply a Firewall rule to the applicable Security Gateway to block that activity. These Firewall rules can be created dynamically through the graphical interface and be set to expire in a specified time period.

You can generate Real-time and historical graphical reports of monitored events. This provides a comprehensive view of Security Gateways, tunnels, remote users, network, security, and performance over time.

The monitoring views show real-time and historical graphical views of:

- Gateway status
- Remote users (SmartView Monitor only)
- System Counters
- VPN tunnel monitoring (SmartView Monitor only)
- Cooperative Enforcement, for Endpoint Security Servers
- Traffic

In SmartView Monitor, you can create customized monitoring view.

SmartView Monitor Use Cases

Use SmartView Monitor to:

Create a Traffic view and report to identify the reasons for slow internet access. The view can be based on an inspection of: Specific Services, Firewall rules or Network Objects, that can be known to impede the flow of internet traffic. If the SmartView Monitor Traffic view indicates that users aggressively use such Services or Network Objects (for example, Peer to Peer application or HTTP), the cause of the slow internet access is determined. If aggressive use is not the cause, the network administrator have to look at other avenues. For instance, performance degradation can be the result of memory overload.

Create a report to determine why employees who work away from the office cannot connect to the network. The view can be based on CPU Use %, to collect information about the status, activities hardware and software use of Check Point products in real-time. The SmartView Monitor Counter view can indicate that there are more failures than successes. Perhaps the company cannot accommodate the number of employees that try to log on at the same time?

Immediate Actions

If the status shows an issue, you can act on that network object.

For example:

- Disconnect client Disconnect one or more of the connected SmartConsole clients.
- Start/Stop cluster member You can see all Cluster Members of a Cluster in SmartView Monitor. You can start or stop a selected Cluster Member.
- Suspicious Action Rules You can block suspicious network activity while you investigate the real risk or to quickly block an obvious intruder.

Monitoring and Handling Alerts

Alerts provide real-time information about possible security threats, and how to avoid, minimize, or recover from the damage. The administrator can define alerts to be sent for different Security Gateways and for certain policies or properties.

The Security Gateways send alerts to the Security Management Server. The Security Management Server forwards these alerts to SmartView Monitor. By default, an alert is sent as a pop-up message to the administrator desktop when a new alert arrives to SmartView Monitor.

You can set global alert parameters for all Security Gateways in the system, or specify an action to send an alert for a particular Security Gateway.

Alerts are sent when:

- Rules or attributes which are set to be tracked as alerts are matched by a passing connection.
- System events (also called System Alerts) are configured to cause an alert when different predefined thresholds are surpassed.

System Alerts are sent for predefined system events or for important situation updates. For example, if free disk space is less than 10%, or if a security policy is changed. System Alerts can also be defined for each product. For example, you can define other System Alerts for Check Point QoS.

Viewing Alerts

Alert commands are set in **SmartConsole** > **Global Properties** > **Log and Alert** > **Alerts** page. The Alerts in this window apply only to Security Gateways.

To see alerts:

- 1. Open SmartConsole > Logs & Events view > External Apps.
- 2. Click Tunnel & User Monitoring.

SmartView Monitor opens.

3. Click the Alerts icon in the toolbar.

The Alerts window opens. Use this window to monitor or delete alerts.

System Alert Monitoring Mechanism

The Check Point Security Management Server System Alert monitoring mechanism uses the defined System Alert thresholds. If a threshold is reached, it activates the defined action.

To activate System Alert monitoring:

Go to Tools > Start System Alert Daemon.

To stop the System Alert monitoring:

Go to Tools > Stop System Alert Daemon.

Monitoring Suspicious Activity Rules

Suspicious Activity Monitoring (SAM) is a utility integrated in SmartView Monitor. It blocks activities that you see in the SmartView Monitor results and that appear to be suspicious. For example, you can block a user who tries several times to gain unauthorized access to a network or internet resource.

A Security Gateway with SAM enabled has Firewall rules to block suspicious connections that are not restricted by the security policy. These rules are applied immediately (policy installation is not required).

The Need for Suspicious Activity Rules

Connections between enterprise and public networks are a security challenge as they leave the network and its applications open to attack. You must be able to inspect and identify all inbound and outbound network activity and decide if it is suspicious.

Creating a Suspicious Activity Rule

SAM rules use CPU resources. Therefore, set an expiration time so you can inspect traffic but not negatively affect performance.

If you confirm that an activity is risky, edit the Security Policy, educate users, or handle the risk.

You can block suspicious activity based on source, destination, or service.

To block an activity:

1. In the SmartView Monitor, click the Suspicious Activity Rules icon in the toolbar.

The Enforced Suspicious Activity Rules window opens.

2. Click Add.

The Block Suspicious Activity window opens.

- 3. In Source and in Destination, select IP or Network:
 - To block all sources or destinations that match the other parameters, enter Any.
 - To block one suspicious source or destination, enter an IP Address and Network Mask.
- 4. In Service:

- To block all connections that fit the other parameters, enter Any.
- To block one suspicious service or protocol, click the button and select a service from the window that opens.
- 5. In **Expiration**, set a time limit.
- 6. Click Enforce.

To create an activity rule based on TCP or UDP use:

1. In the Block Suspicious Activity window , click Service.

The Select Service window opens.

- 2. Click Custom Service.
- 3. Select TCP or UDP.
- 4. Enter the port number.
- 5. Click OK.

To define SmartView Monitor actions on rule match:

1. In the **Block Suspicious Activity** window, click **Advanced**.

The Advanced window opens.

- 2. In Action, select the Firewall action for SmartView Monitor to do on rule match:
 - Notify Send a message about the activity, but do not block it.
 - **Drop** Drop packets, but do not send a response. The connection will time out.
 - **Reject** Send an RST packet to the source and close the connection.
- 3. In Track, select No Log, Log or Alert.
- 4. If the action is **Drop**: To close the connection immediately on rule match, select **Close connections**.
- 5. Click OK.

Creating a Suspicious Activity Rule from Results

If you monitor traffic, and see a suspicious result, you can create an SAM rule immediately from the results.

Note - You can only create a **Suspicious Activity** rule for **Traffic** views with data about the **Source** or **Destination** (Top Sources, Top P2P Users, and so on).

To create an SAM rule:

1. In SmartView Monitor open a Traffic view.

The Select Gateway / Interface window opens.

- 2. Select an object.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. In the Results, right-click the bar in the chart (or the row in the report), that represents the source, destination, or other traffic property to block.
- 5. Select Block Source.

The Block Suspicious Activity window opens.

- 6. Create the rule.
- 7. Click Enforce.

For example:

Your corporate policy does not allow to share peer2peer file, and you see it in the **Traffic > Top P2P Users** results.

1. Right-click the result bar and select **Block Source**.

The SAM rule is set up automatically with the user IP address and the **P2P_File_ Sharing_Applications** service.

- 2. Click Enforce.
- 3. For the next hour, while this traffic is dropped and logged, contact the user.

Managing Suspicious Activity Rules

The **Enforced Suspicious Activity Rules** window shows the currently enforced rules. If you add a rule that conflicts with another rule, the conflicting rule remains hidden. For example, if you define a rule to drop http traffic, and a rule exists to reject http traffic, only the drop rule shows.

sam_alert

Description

For SAM v1, this utility executes Suspicious Activity Monitoring (SAM) actions according to the information received from the standard input.

For SAM v2, this utility executes Suspicious Activity Monitoring (SAM) actions with User Defined Alerts mechanism.

For more information, see the <u>R82 CLI Reference Guide</u> - Chapter Security Management Server Commands - Section sam_alert.

Configuring Alerts and Thresholds in SmartView Monitor

System Alerts and Thresholds

You can set thresholds for selected Security Gateways. When a threshold is passed, a system alert is sent.

To set System Alert thresholds:

- 1. Open Gateways Status view.
- 2. Right-click a network object and select Configure Thresholds.

The Threshold Settings window opens.

- 3. Set the thresholds for the selected object:
 - Use global settings All objects get the same thresholds for system alerts.
 - None The selected Security Gateway object does not have thresholds for system alerts.
 - Custom Change the thresholds for the selected object to be different than the global settings.

To change Global Threshold settings:

1. In the Threshold Settings window, click Edit Global Settings.

The Global Threshold Settings window opens.

bled	Threshold	Operator		Value	Action		Product
v	CPU usage	more than	Ŧ	90%	alert	Ŧ	System
	Free disk space	less than	Ŧ	15%	alert	Ŧ	System
v	Status connection	not	-	connected	alert	Ψ.	System
v	Firewall Policy	equal	-	not installed	alert	Ŧ	Firewall
v	Firewall Policy install time	changed	-		alert	*	Firewall
v	Firewall Policy name	changed	-		alert	Ψ.	Firewall
1	Synchronization state	equal	-	not synchronized	alert	Ψ.	Security Management Ser
1	QoS Policy	equal	-	not installed	alert	-	QoS
1	QoS Policy install time	changed	*		alert	Ψ.	QoS
V	QoS Policy name	changed	-		alert	-	QoS

- 2. Select thresholds.
- 3. In Action, select:
 - none No alert.
 - log Sends a log entry to the database.
 - alert Opens a pop-up window to your desktop.
 - mail Sends a mail alert to your Inbox.
 - **snmptrap** Sends an SNMP alert.
 - useralert Runs a script. Make sure a user-defined action is available (in SmartConsole, click Menu > Global properties > Log and Alert > Alert Commands).

To change custom threshold settings:

1. In the Threshold Settings window, select Custom.

The global threshold settings show.

- 2. Select thresholds to enable for this Security Gateway or Cluster Member.
- 3. Set defining values.

Working with SNMP Monitoring Thresholds

You can configure a variety of different SNMP thresholds that generate SNMP traps, or alerts. You can use these thresholds to monitor many system components automatically without requesting information from each object or device. The categories of thresholds that you can configure include:

- Hardware
- High Availability
- Networking
- Resources
- Log Server Connectivity

Some categories apply only to some machines or deployments.

In each category there are many individual thresholds that you can set. For example, the hardware category includes alerts for the state of the RAID disk, the state of the temperature sensor, the state of the fan speed sensor, and others. For each individual threshold, you can configure:

- If it is enabled or disabled
- How frequently alerts are sent
- The severity of the alert
- The threshold point (if necessary)
- Where the alerts are sent to

You can also configure some settings globally, such as how often alerts are send and where they are sent to.

Types of Alerts

- *Active alerts* are sent when a threshold point is passed or the status of a monitored component is problematic.
- *Clear alerts* are sent when the problem is resolved and the component has returned to its normal value. Clear alerts look like active alerts but the severity is set to 0.

Configuring SNMP Monitoring Thresholds

Configure the SNMP monitoring thresholds in the command line of the Security Management Server. When you install the policy on the Security Gateways. the SNMP monitoring thresholds are applied globally to these Security Gateway.

Configuring SNMP thresholds on a Multi-Domain Server

In a Multi-Domain Security Management environment, you can configure thresholds on the Multi-Domain Server and on each individual Domain Management Server.

Thresholds that you configure on the Multi-Domain Server level are for the Multi-Domain Server only.

Thresholds that you configure for a Domain Management Server are for that Domain Management Server and its managed Security Gateways. If a threshold applies to the Multi-Domain Server and the Security Gateways managed by the Domain Management Server, set it on the Multi-Domain Server and Domain Management Server. But in this situation you can only get alerts from the Multi-Domain Server if the threshold passed.

For example, because the Multi-Domain Server and Domain Management Server are on the same machine, if the CPU threshold is passed, it applies to both of them. But only the Multi-Domain Server generates alerts.

You can see the Multi-Domain Security Management level for each threshold with the "threshold config" command.

• If the Multi-Domain Security Management level for a threshold is **Multi-Domain Server**:

Alerts are generated for the Multi-Domain Server when the threshold point is passed.

If the Multi-Domain Security Management level for a threshold is Multi-Domain Server and Domain Management Server:

Alerts are generated for the Multi-Domain Server and Domain Management Servers separately when the threshold point is passed.

Configuring a SNMP thresholds on Security Gateways

You can configure SNMP thresholds locally on a Security Gateway with the same procedure that you do on a Security Management Server. But each time you install a policy on the Security Gateway, the local settings are erased and it reverts to the global SNMP threshold settings.

You can use the "threshold_config" command to save the configuration file and load it again later.

The configuration file that you can back up is: SFWDIR/conf/thresholds.conf

For more information about the "threshold_config" command, see the <u>R82 CLI Reference</u> <u>Guide</u>.

Configuration Procedures

There is one primary command to configure the thresholds in the command line - threshold_config.

You must be in the Expert mode to run it.

After you run the threshold_config command, follow the on-screen instructions to make selections and configure the global settings and each threshold.

When you run threshold config, you get these options:

- Show policy name Shows you the name configured for the threshold policy.
- Set policy name Lets you set a name for the threshold policy.
- Save policy Lets you save the policy.
- Save policy to file Lets you export the policy to a file.
- Load policy from file Lets you import a threshold policy from a file.
- **Configure global alert settings** Lets you configure global settings for how frequently alerts are sent and how many alerts are sent.
- **Configure alert destinations** Lets you configure a location or locations where the SNMP alerts are sent.
- View thresholds overview Shows a list of all thresholds that you can set including: the category of the threshold, if it is active or disabled, the threshold point (if relevant), and a short description of what it monitors.
- Configure thresholds Opens the list of threshold categories to let you select thresholds to configure.

Configure Global Alert Settings

If you select **Configure global alert settings**, you can configure global settings for how frequently alerts are sent and how many alerts are sent. You can configure these settings for each threshold. If a threshold does not have its own alert settings, it uses the global settings by default.

You can configure these options:

- Enter Alert Repetitions How many alerts are sent when an active alert is triggered. If you enter 0, alerts are sent until the problem is fixed.
- Enter Alert Repetitions Delay How long the system waits between it sends active alerts.
- Enter Clear Alert Repetitions How many clear alerts are sent after a threshold returns to a regular value.
- Enter Clear Alert Repetitions Delay How long the system waits between it sends clear alerts.

Configure Alert Destinations

If you select Configure Alert Destinations, you can add and remove destinations for where the alerts are sent. You can see a list of the configured destinations. A destination is usually an NMS (Network Management System) or a Check Point Log Server.

After you enter the details for a destination, the CLI asks if the destination applies to all thresholds.

- If you enter yes, alerts for all thresholds are sent to that destination, unless you remove the destination from an individual threshold.
- If you enter no, no alerts are sent to that destination by default. But for each individual threshold, you can configure the destinations and you can add destinations that were not applied to all thresholds.

For each threshold, you can choose to which of the alert destinations its alerts are sent. If you do not define alert destination settings for a threshold, it sends alerts to all of the destinations that you applied to all thresholds.

For each alert destination enter:

- Name An identifying name.
- **IP** The IP address of the destination.
- Port Through which port it is accessed
- Ver The version on SNMP that it uses
- Other data Some versions of SNMP require more data. Enter the data that is supplied for that SNMP version.

Configure Thresholds

If you select Configure thresholds, you see a list of the categories of thresholds, including:

- Hardware
- High Availability
- Networking
- Resources
- Log Server Connectivity

Some categories apply only to some machines or deployments. For example, Hardware applies only to Check Point appliances and High Availability applies only to clusters or High Availability deployments.

Select a category to see the thresholds in it. Each threshold can have these options:

- Enable/Disable Threshold If the threshold is enabled, the system sends alerts when there is a problem. If it is disabled it does not generate alerts.
- Set Severity You can give each threshold a severity setting. The options are: Low, Medium, High, and Critical. The severity level shows in the alerts and in SmartView Monitor. It lets you know quickly how important the alert is.
- Set Repetitions Set how frequently and how many alerts will be sent when the threshold is passed. If you do not configure this, it uses the global alert settings.
- Set Threshold Point Enter the value that will cause active alerts when it is passed. Enter the number only, without a unit of measurement.
- Configure Alert Destinations See all of the configured alert destinations. By default, active alerts and clear alerts are sent to the destinations. You can change this for each destination. When you select the destination you see these options
 - **Remove from destinations** If you select this, alerts for this threshold are not sent to the selected destination.
 - Add a destination If you configured a destination in the global alert destinations but did not apply it to all thresholds, you can add it to the threshold.
 - **Disable clear alerts** Cleared alerts for this threshold are not sent to the selected destination. Active alerts are sent.

Completing the Configuration

- 1. On the Security Management Server, install the policy on all Security Gateways.
- 2. For a local Security Gateway threshold policy or a Multi-Domain Server environment, restart the CPD process:
 - a. Run:

```
cpwd_admin stop -name CPD -path "$CPDIR/bin/cpd_admin" -
command "cpd_admin stop"
```

b. Run:

```
cpwd_admin start -name CPD -path "$CPDIR/bin/cpd" -
command "cpd"
```

Monitoring SNMP Thresholds

You can see an overview of the SNMP thresholds that you configure in SmartView Monitor.

To see an overview of the SNMP thresholds:

- 1. Open SmartView Monitor and select a Security Gateway.
- 2. In the summary of the Security Gateway data that open in the bottom pane, click **System Information**.
- 3. In the new pane that opens, click **Thresholds**.

In the pane that opens, you can see these details:

- General Info A summary of the SNMP Threshold policy.
 - Policy name The name that you set for the policy in the CLI.
 - State If the policy is enabled or disabled.
 - Thresholds How many thresholds are enabled.
 - Active events How many thresholds are currently sending alerts.
 - Generated Events How many not active thresholds became active since the policy was installed.
- Active Events Details for the thresholds that are currently sending alerts.
 - Name The name of the alert (given in the CLI).
 - **Category** The category of the alert (given in the CLI), for example, Hardware or Resources.
 - MIB object The name of the object as recorded in the MIB file.
 - MIB object value The value of the object when the threshold became active, as recorded in the MIB file.
 - State The status of the object: active or clearing (passed the threshold but returns to usual value).
 - Severity The severity of that threshold, as you configured for it in the CLI.
 - Activation time When was the alert first sent.

- Alert Destinations A list of the destinations, to which alerts are sent.
 - Name The name of the location.
 - Type The type of location. For example, a Log Server or NMS.
 - **State** If logs are sent from the Security Gateway or Security Management Server to the destination machine.
 - Alert Count How many alerts were sent to the destination from when the policy started.
- Errors Shows thresholds that cannot be monitored.

For example, the Security Gateway cannot monitor RAID sensors on a machine that does not have RAID sensors. Therefore, it shows an error for the RAID Sensor Threshold.

- Threshold Name The name of the threshold with an error.
- Error A description of the error.
- Time of Error When the error first occurred.

Customizing Results

You can create Custom Views, to change the fields that show in the results.

Editing a Custom View

The changes you make to a view are not automatically saved. You can use this procedure to save a predefined view as a new Custom view.

To save a new view with changes:

1. Right-click the results of the view and select **Properties**.

Note - For some of the views, this option is View Properties or Query Properties.

- 2. Add or remove fields and other options for the view.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. For some of the views, select the Security Gateway.
- 5. In the Results toolbar, click the Save View to Tree button.
- 6. In the window that opens, enter a name for the new view.
- 7. Click Save.

Creating a Custom Gateway Status View

To create a custom Gateway status view:

- In the Tree, right-click Custom and select New Gateways View.
 The Gateway Properties window opens.
- 2. In Select available fields from, select the source of the data.
- 3. In Available fields, double-click the data to add to SmartView Monitor.
- 4. Open the Filter Gateways tab to remove Security Gateways from the results of this view.
- 5. Click OK.
- 6. Right-click the new **Custom** view and select **Rename**.
- 7. Enter a name for the view.

Creating a Custom Traffic View

To creating a custom traffic view:

1. In the Tree, right-click Custom and select New Traffic View.

The Query Properties window opens.

- 2. Select History or Real Time.
- 3. If you select Real Time, select what you want to see
 - Interfaces
 - Services
 - IPs / Network Objects
 - QoS Rules
 - Security Rules
 - Connections
 - Tunnels
 - Virtual Links
 - Packet Size Distribution
- 4. Select the Target Security Gateway.

- If you often need results for on Security Gateway, select it in **Specific Gateway**.
- If you have a small number of Security Gateways, you can create a custom view for each one.
- If not, select Prompt for Gateway before run.
- 5. Open the next tabs.

The tabs that show depend on the Query Type you selected.

- If you select History, the next tab is Traffic History, where you select the Time Frame and type of report.
- If you select Real Time, the next tabs let you set services or objects to monitor, Security Gateways or specified IP addresses to monitor, update interval, result type, and chart settings.
- 6. Click Save.
- 7. Right-click the new Custom view and select Rename.
- 8. Enter a name for the view.

Creating a Custom Counters View

To create a custom counters view:

1. In the Tree, right-click Custom and select New Counters View.

The Query Properties window opens.

- 2. Select History or Real Time.
- 3. Select the Target Security Gateway.
 - If results for one Security Gateway are frequently necessary, select it in Specific Gateway.
 - If you have a small number of Security Gateways, you can create a custom view for each one.
 - If not, select **Prompt for Gateway before run**.
- 4. Open the **Counters** tab.
- 5. Select a category and the counters to add.

You can add counters from different categories to one view.

6. In the Query Type:

- If the Query Type is **History**: Select the **Time Frame** and click **Save**.
- If the Query Type is Real Time:
 - a. Open the Settings tab.
 - b. Set the update interval and chart type.
 - c. Click Save.
- 7. Right-click the new Custom view and select Rename.
- 8. Enter a name for the view.

Creating a Custom Tunnel View

To create a custom tunnel view:

1. In the SmartView Monitor client, select **File > New > Tunnels View**.

The Query Properties window shows.

2. Select **Prompt on** to generate a report about a specified Tunnel, Community or Gateway.

Prompt on: When you run the view, you will be asked for the specified Tunnel, Community or Security Gateway, on which to base your view.

Important - Do not select Prompt on if your view is not about one of these three.

3. Select Show one record per tunnel or Show two records per tunnel.

Show two records per tunnel shows a more accurate status because the report provides the status for the tunnels in both directions.

- 4. In the **Show** column, select the filter to be related to this view
- 5. In the **Filter** column, click the corresponding **Any(*)** link.
- 6. Select the related objects to edit the selected filters.
- 7. Click the Advanced button.
- 8. Set a limit in the **Records limitation** window for the number of lines that show in the report.
- 9. Enter a record limitation.
- 10. Click **OK**.

A Tunnels view shows in the Custom branch of the Tree View.

- 11. Enter the name of the new **Tunnel** view.
- 12. Click Enter.

Creating a Custom Users View

To create a custom users view:

1. In SmartView Monitor, select File > New > Users View.

The Query Properties window shows.

2. Select **Prompt on** to generate a user report about a specified user or Gateway.

Prompt on: When you decide to run the view, you will be asked for the specified User DN or Security Gateway, on which to base your view.

Important - Do not select Prompt on if your view is not about one of these two.

- 3. In the **Show** column, select the filter to be related with this view.
- 4. In the Filter column, click the corresponding Any(*) link.
- 5. Select the related objects to edit the selected filters.
- 6. Click the **Advanced** button to set a limit (in the **Records limitation** window) to the number of lines that show in the report.
- 7. Enter a record limitation.
- 8. Click OK.

A Users view shows in the Custom branch of the Tree View.

- 9. Enter a name for the new **Users** view.
- 10. Click Enter.

Custom View Example

For example purposes, we create a real-time **Traffic** view for **Services**.

To create a real-time traffic view:

- 1. Double-click the view to change and select the Security Gateway, for which you create the view.
- 2. Select the View Properties button on the view toolbar.

The Query Properties window shows.

3. Select Real-Time.

Real-Time provides information about currently monitored traffic or system counters.

4. Select **History** for information that was logged before.

5. Select the topic about which you want to create a **Real-Time** traffic view in the dropdown list provided. For example, for purposes select **Services**.

Note - The remaining tabs in the **Query Properties** window change according to the type of view you create and the selection you made in the **Real-Time** drop-down list.

6. Select the Target of this Custom Traffic view.

Target is the Security Gateway, for which you monitor traffic.

- 7. Click the Monitor by Services tab.
- 8. Select **Specific Services** and the **Services** for which you want to create a custom **Traffic** view.
- 9. Click the Filter tab.
- 10. Make the necessary selections.
- 11. Click the **Settings** tab.
- 12. Make the necessary selections.
- 13. Click OK when you are done with your selections.

The Select Gateway / Interface window shows.

- 14. Select the Security Gateway or interface, for which you want to create or run this new view.
- 15. Click the Save to Tree button on the toolbar.
- 16. Enter a name for the new view.
- 17. Click OK.

The new view is saved in the **Custom** branch.

Exporting a Custom View

You can back up a custom view before you install an upgrade. You can share a custom view with other SmartView Monitor GUI clients and other users.

To export a custom view:

- 1. Right-click the view and select Export Properties.
- 2. In the window that opens, enter a pathname for the export file.
- 3. Click Save.

A file with an **svm_setting** extension is created.

Setting Your Default View

You can set which view to see when SmartView Monitor starts.

In the Tree, right-click the view and select Run at Startup.

Refreshing Views

Results are automatically refreshed every 60 seconds.

To refresh the view earlier, right-click the view name in the Tree and select Run.

To refresh data about an object in the current view, right-click the object in the results and select **Refresh**.

Monitoring Device Status

The Gateways & Servers view in SmartConsole contains 6 views of the status of the Security Management Server and all the devices it manages.

- General Provides general information about all devices.
- Health Provides information about the health or operational status of each device.
- Traffic Provides information about the volume of network traffic which passes through a specific device
- Access Control Provides information about the Access Control blades and Identity Awareness information for each device.
- Threat Prevention Provides information about the Threat Prevention blades and policy for each device.
- Management Provides information about the management blades for each device.
- Licenses Provides information about the licenses of the device and Software Blades enabled on the device.

The **General** view is the default view. To change the view, go to the top-left corner of the **Gateways & Servers** view > **Columns**, and from the drop-down menu, select the required view.

Device Status

The status updates of a Security Gateway reflect the status of the Software Blades. For example, if statuses of all the **Software Blades** are **OK**, except for the SmartEvent blade, which has a **Problem** status, the overall status is **Problem**.

Status Icon	Description
⊘OK	The device and all its Software Blades work properly.
• Attention	At least one Software Blade has a minor issue, but the device works.
[©] Problem	At least one Software Blade reported a malfunction, or an enabled Software Blade is not installed.
⊠Waiting	SmartView Monitor waits for the Security Management Server to send data from Security Gateways.
Disconnected	Cannot reach the device.
♥Untrusted	Cannot make Secure Internal Communication between the Security Management Server and the Security Gateway.

Displaying Gateway Data

You can see detailed information about each Check Point Security Gateway or OPSEC Gateway.

To see data about a specific gateway:

- 1. In SmartConsole, go to the Logs & Events view.
- 2. At the bottom section of the view, go to **External Apps**, and select **Tunnel & User Monitoring**.

The Check Point SmartView Monitor opens.

3. Go to Gateway Status > Firewalls.

The **Firewalls** view displays general information about each Security Gateway.

- 4. For system information, click a specific gateway, and go to System Information.
- 5. For more information about a specific Software Blade, click the relevant Software Blade.

System Information

 CPU - The specific CPU parameters (for example, Idle, User, Kernel, and Total) for each CPU.

Note - In the Gateways Results view the Average CPU indicates the average total CPU usage of all existing CPOS.

- Memory The total amount of virtual memory, what percentage of this total is used. The total amount of real memory, what percentage of this total is used, and the amount of real memory available for use.
- Disk Shows all the disk partitions and their specific details (for example, capacity, used, and free).

Note - In the **Gateways Results** view the percentage/total of free space in the hard disk on which the Firewall is installed. For example, if there are two hard drives C and D and the Firewall is on C, the Disk Free percentage represents the free space in C and not D.

To view the status of Check Point applications on the local server or another appliance, the cpstat command. For more information, see the <u>R82 CLI Reference Guide</u> - Chapter Security Gateway Commands - Section cpstat.

Firewall

- Security Policy Name and Installed On The name of the Security Policy installed on the Security Gateway, and the date and time that this policy was installed.
- Packets The number of packets accepted, rejected, dropped and logged by the Security Gateway.

- UFP Cache performance The hit ratio percentage and the total number of hits handled by the cache, the number of connections inspected by the UFP Server.
- Hash Kernel Memory (the memory status) and System Kernel Memory (the OS memory) The total amount of memory allocated and used. The total amount of memory blocks used. The number of memory allocations, and those allocation operations which failed. The number of times that the memory allocation freed up, or failed to free up. The NAT Cache, including the total amount of hits and misses.

Virtual Private Networks

The Virtual Private Networks (VPN) is divided into these main statuses:

- **Current** represents the current number of active output.
- High Watermark represents the maximum number of current output
- Accumulative data represents the total number of the output.

This includes:

- Active Tunnels All types of active VPN peers to which there is currently an open IPsec tunnel. This is useful to track the activity level of the VPN Security Gateway. High Watermark includes the maximum number of VPN peers for which there was an open IPsec tunnel since the Security Gateway was restarted.
- Remote Access All types of Remote Access VPN users with which there is currently an open IPsec tunnel. This is useful to track the activity level and load patterns of VPN Security Gateways that serve as a remote access server. High Watermark includes the maximum number of Remote Access VPN users with which there was an open IPsec tunnel since the Security Gateway was restarted.
- Tunnels Establishment Negotiation The current rate of successful Phase I IKE Negotiations (measured in Negotiations per second). This is useful to track the activity level and load patterns of a VPN Gateway that serve as a remote access server. High Watermark includes the highest rate of successful Phase I IKE Negotiations since the Policy was installed (measured in Negotiations per second). Accumulative data includes the total number of successful Phase I IKE negotiations since the Policy was installed.
- Failed The current failure rate of Phase I IKE Negotiations can be used to troubleshoot (for instance, denial of service) or for a heavy load of VPN remote access connections. High Watermark includes the highest rate of failed Phase I IKE negotiations since the Policy was installed. Accumulative is the total number of failed Phase I IKE negotiations since the Policy was installed.
- Concurrent The current number of concurrent IKE negotiations. This is useful to track the behavior of VPN connection initiation, especially in large deployments of remote access VPN scenarios. High Watermark includes the maximum number of concurrent IKE negotiations since the Policy was installed.

- Encrypted and Decrypted throughput The current rate of encrypted or decrypted traffic (measured in Mbps). Encrypted or decrypted throughput is useful (in conjunction with encrypted or decrypted packet rate) to track VPN usage and VPN performance of the Security Gateway. High Watermark includes the maximum rate of encrypted or decrypted traffic (measured in Mbps) since the Security Gateway was restarted. Accumulative includes the total encrypted or decrypted traffic since the Security Gateway was restarted (measured in Mbps).
- Encrypted and Decrypted packets The current rate of encrypted or decrypted packets (measured in packets per second). Encrypted or decrypted packet rate is useful (in conjunction with encrypted/decrypted throughput) to track VPN usage and VPN performance of the Security Gateway. High Watermark includes the maximum rate of encrypted or decrypted packets since the Security Gateway was restarted, and Accumulative, the total number of encrypted packets since the Security Gateway was restarted.
- Encryption and Decryption errors The current rate at which errors are encountered by the Security Gateway (measured in errors per second). This is useful to troubleshoot VPN connectivity issues. High Watermark includes the maximum rate at which errors are encountered by the Security Gateway (measured in errors per second) since the Security Gateway was restarted, and the total number of errors encountered by the Security Gateway since the Security Gateway was restarted.
- Hardware The name of the VPN Accelerator Vendor, and the status of the Accelerator. General errors such as the current rate at which VPN Accelerator general errors are encountered by the Security Gateway (measured in errors per second). The High Watermark includes the maximum rate at which VPN Accelerator general errors are encountered by the Security Gateway (measured in errors per second) since the Security Gateway was restarted. The total number of VPN Accelerator general errors encountered by the Security Gateway since it was restarted.
- **IP Compression** Compressed/Decompressed packets statistics and errors.

QoS

- Policy information The name of the QoS Policy and the date and time that it was installed.
- Number of interfaces The number of interfaces on the Check Point QoS Security Gateway. Information about the interfaces applies to both inbound and outbound traffic. This includes the maximum and average amount of bytes that pass per second, and the total number of conversations. Conversations are active connections and connections that are anticipated as a result of prior inspection. Examples are data connections in FTP, and the "second half" of UDP connections.
- Packet and Byte information The number of packets and bytes in Check Point QoS queues.

ClusterXL

- Gateway working mode The Security Gateway works mode as a Cluster Member (Active or not), and its place in the priority sequence. Working modes are: ClusterXL, Load Sharing, Sync only. Running modes: Active, Standby, Ready, and Down.
- Interfaces Interfaces recognized by the Security Gateway. The interface data includes the IP Address and status of the specified interface, if the connection that passes through the interface is verified, trusted or shared.
- Problem Notes Descriptions of the problem notification device such as its status, priority and when the status was last verified.

OPSEC

- The version name or number, and build number of the Check Point OPSEC SDK and OPSEC product. The time it takes (in seconds) since the OPSEC Gateway is up and running.
- The OPSEC vendor can add fields to their OPSEC Application Gateway details.

Check Point Security Management

- The synchronization status indicates the status of the peer Security Management Servers in relation to that of the selected Security Management Server. View this status in the Management High Availability Servers window, if you are connected to the Active or Standby Security Management Server. The possible synchronization statuses are:
 - Never been synchronized Immediately after the Secondary Security Management Server was installed, it did not undergo with the first manual synchronization. This synchronization brings it up to date with the Primary Management.
 - **Synchronized** The peer is synchronized correctly and has the same database information and installed Security Policy.
 - **Collision** The active Security Management Server and its peer have different installed policies and databases. The administrator must do manual synchronization and decide which of the Security Management Servers to overwrite.
- Clients The number of connected clients on the Security Management Server, the name of the SmartConsole, the administrator that manages the SmartConsole, the name of the SmartConsole host, the name of the locked database, and the type of SmartConsole application.

SmartEvent Correlation Unit and the SmartEvent Server

SmartView Monitor reads statuses from the SmartEvent Correlation Unit and SmartEvent Server.

SmartEvent Correlation Unit status examples:

- Is the SmartEvent Correlation Unit active or inactive
- Is the SmartEvent Correlation Unit connected to the SmartEvent Server
- Is the SmartEvent Correlation Unit connected to the Log Server
- SmartEvent Correlation Unit and Log Server connection status
- Offline job status
- Lack of disk space status

SmartEvent Server status examples:

- Last handle event time
- Is the SmartEvent Server active or inactive
- A list of SmartEvent Correlation Unit the SmartEvent Server is connected to
- How many events arrived in a specified time period

Connect the SmartEvent Correlation Unit to the Log Server to read logs. Connect it to the SmartEvent Server to send events. If problems occur in the SmartEvent Correlation Unit connection to other components (for example, SIC problems) the problems are reported in the SmartEvent Correlation Unit status.

For the same reasons, the SmartEvent Server contains statuses that provide information about connections to all SmartEvent Correlation Unit.

Anti-Virus and URL Filtering

SmartView Monitor can now provide statuses and counters for Security Gateways with enabled Anti-Virus and URL Filtering.

The statuses are divided into these categories:

- Current Status
- Update Status (for example, when was the signature update last checked)

Anti-Virus statuses are associated with signature checks and URL Filtering statuses are associated with URLs and categories.

In addition, SmartView Monitor can now run Anti-Virus and URL Filtering counters.

For example:

- Top five attacks in the last hour
- Top 10 attacks since last reset
- Top 10 http attacks in the last hour
- HTTP attacks general info

Multi-Domain Security Management

SmartView Monitor can be used to monitor Multi-Domain Servers. This information can be viewed in the **Gateway Status** view. In this view you can see Multi-Domain Security Management counter information (for example, CPU or Overall Status).

The 'cpstat' Command

Shows the status and statistics information of Check Point applications.

For more information, see the <u>R82 CLI Reference Guide</u> - Chapter Security Gateway Commands - Section cpstat.

Starting and Stopping Cluster Members

To stop and start one member of a cluster from SmartView Monitor:

- 1. Open the Gateway Status view.
- 2. Right-click the Cluster Member and select Cluster Member > Start Member or Stop Member.

Monitoring VPN Tunnels

This section describes how to monitor VPN tunnels.

VPN Tunnels Solution

VPN Tunnels are secure links between gateways. These Tunnels ensure secure connections between gateways of an organization and remote access clients.

When Tunnels are created and put to use, you can keep track of their normal function, so that possible malfunctions and connectivity problems can be accessed and solved as soon as possible.

To ensure this security level, SmartView Monitor constantly monitor and analyze the status of an organization's Tunnels to recognize malfunctions and connectivity problems. With the use of **Tunnel** views, you can generate fully detailed reports that include information about the Tunnels that fulfill the specific **Tunnel** views conditions. With this information you can monitor Tunnel status, the Community with which a Tunnel is associated, the gateways, to which the Tunnel is connected, and so on.

These are the Tunnel types:

- A Regular tunnel refers to the ability to send encrypted data between two peers. The Regular tunnel is considered up if both peers have Phase 1 and Phase 2 keys.
- Permanent tunnels are constantly kept active. As a result, it is easier to recognize malfunctions and connectivity problems. With Permanent tunnels administrators can monitor the two sides of a VPN tunnel and identify problems without delay.

Permanent tunnels are constantly monitored. Therefore, each VPN tunnel in the community can be set as a Permanent tunnel. A log, alert or user defined action can be issued when the VPN tunnel is down.

The configuration of Permanent tunnels takes place on the community level and:

- Can be specified for an entire community. This option sets every VPN tunnel in the community as permanent.
- Can be specified for a specific Security Gateway. Use this option to configure specific Security Gateways to have Permanent tunnels.
- Can be specified for a single VPN tunnel. This feature allows you to configure specific tunnels between specific Security Gateways as permanent.

This table shows the possible **Tunnel** states and their significance to a **Permanent** or **Regular** Tunnel.

State	Permanent Tunnel	Regular Tunnel	
Up	The tunnel works and the data can flow with no problems.	IDE SA (Phase 1) and IPSEC SA (Phase 2) exist with a peer gateway.	
Destroyed	The tunnel is destroyed.	The tunnel is destroyed.	
Up Phase1	Irrelevant	Tunnel initialization is in process and Phase 1 i complete (that is, IKE SA exists with cookies), but there is no Phase 2.	
Down	There is a tunnel failure. You cannot send and receive data to or from a remote peer.	Irrelevant.	
Up Init	The tunnel is initialized.	Irrelevant.	
Gateway not Responding	The Security Gateway is not responding.	The Security Gateway is not responding.	

VPN Tunnel View Updates

If a Tunnel is deleted from SmartConsole, the **Tunnel Results View** shows the deleted Tunnel for an hour after it was deleted.

If a community is edited, the **Results View** shows removed tunnels for an hour after they were removed from the community.

Running VPN Tunnel Views

When a **Tunnel** view runs the results show in the SmartView Monitor client.

A Tunnel view can run:

- From an existing view
- When you create a new view
- When you change an existing view

A Tunnels view can be created and run for:

- Down Permanent Tunnels
- Permanent Tunnels

- Tunnels on Community
- Tunnels on a Security Gateway

Run a Down Tunnel View

Down Tunnel view results list all the Tunnels that are currently not active.

To run a down tunnel view:

- 1. In the SmartView Monitor, click the **Tunnels** branch in the **Tree View**.
- 2. In the **Tunnels** branch (Custom or Predefined), double-click the **Down Permanent Tunnel** view.

A list of all the **Down Tunnels** associated with the selected view properties shows.

Run a Permanent Tunnel View

Permanent Tunnel view results list all of the existing **Permanent Tunnels** and their current status.

A Permanent Tunnel is a Tunnel that is constantly kept active.

To run a permanent tunnel view:

- 1. In the SmartView Monitor client, click the **Tunnels** branch in the **Tree View**.
- 2. In the **Tunnels** branch, double-click the **Custom Permanent Tunnel** view that you want to run.

A list of the **Permanent Tunnels** related to the selected view properties shows.

Run a Tunnels on Community View

Tunnels on Community view results list all the Tunnels related to a selected Community.

To run a tunnels on community view:

- 1. In the SmartView Monitor client, click the **Tunnels** branch in the **Tree View**.
- 2. In the **Tunnels** branch (Custom or Predefined), double-click the **Tunnels on Community** view.

A list of all Communities shows.

- 3. Select the Community whose **Tunnels** you want to monitor.
- 4. Click OK.

A list of all the **Tunnels** related to the selected Community shows.

Run Tunnels on Gateway View

Tunnels on Gateways view results list all of the **Tunnels** related to a selected Security Gateway.

To run tunnels on Gateway view:

- 1. In the SmartView Monitor client, click the **Tunnels** branch in the **Tree View**.
- 2. In the **Tunnels** branch (**Custom** or **Predefined**), double-click the **Tunnels on Gateway** view.

A list of the Security Gateways shows.

- 3. Select the Security Gateway, whose **Tunnels** and their status you want to see.
- 4. Click OK.

A list of the **Tunnels** related to the selected Security Gateway shows.

Monitoring Traffic or System Counters

This sections describes how to monitor traffic or system counters.

Traffic or System Counters Solution

SmartView Monitor provides tools that enable you to monitor traffic related to specified network activities, and server, as well as the status of activities, hardware and software use of different Check Point products in real-time. With this knowledge you can:

- Block specified traffic.
- Control traffic flow on a Security Gateway.
- See how many tunnels are currently open, or the rate of new connections that pass through the VPN Gateway.

SmartView Monitor delivers a comprehensive solution to monitor and analyze network traffic and network usage. You can generate fully detailed or summarized graphs and charts for all connections intercepted and logged when you monitor traffic, and for numerous rates and figures when you count usage throughout the network.

Traffic

Traffic Monitoring provides in-depth details on network traffic and activity. As a network administrator you can generate traffic information to:

Analyze network traffic pattern

Network traffic patterns help administrators determine which services demand the most network resources.

Audit and estimate costs of network us

Monitoring traffic can provide information on how the use of network resources is divided among corporate users and departments. Reports that summarize customer use of services, bandwidth and time can provide a basis to estimate costs for each user or department.

- Identify the departments and users that generate the most traffic and the times of peak activity.
- Detect and monitor suspicious activity. Network administrators can produce graphs and charts that document blocked traffic, alerts, rejected connections, or failed authentication attempts to identify possible intrusion attempts.

A Traffic view can be created to monitor the Traffic types listed in the following table.

Traffic Type	Explanation
Services	Shows the current status view about Services used through the selected Security Gateway.
IPs/Network Objects	Shows the current status view about active IPs/Network Objects through the selected Security Gateway.
Security Rules	Shows the current status view about the most frequently used Access Control rules. The Name column in the legend states the rule number as previously configured in SmartConsole.
Interfaces	Shows the current status view about the Interfaces associated with the selected Security Gateway.
Connections	Shows the current status view about current connections initiated through the selected Security Gateway.
Tunnels	Shows the current status view about the Tunnels associated with the selected Security Gateway and their usage.
Virtual Link	Shows the current traffic status view between two Security Gateways (for example, Bandwidth, Bandwidth Loss, and Round Trip Time).
Packet Size Distribution	Shows the current status view about packets according to the size of the packets.
QoS	Shows the current traffic level for each QoS rule. Note - "Top QoS Rules" view in SmartView Monitor shows that almost all traffic matches the "No Match" rule when SecureXL is enabled on the Security Gateway. Refer to <u>sk118720</u> .

Traffic Legend Output

The values that you see in the legend depend on the Traffic view that you run.

All units in the view results show in configurable Intervals.

System Counters

Monitoring System Counters provides in-depth details about Check Point Software Blade usage and activities. As a network administrator, you can generate system status information about:

- Resource usage for the variety of components associated with the Security Gateway.
 For example, the average use of real physical memory, the average percent of CPU time used by user applications, free disk space, and so on.
- Security Gateway performance statistics for a variety of Firewall components. For example, the average number of concurrent CVP sessions handled by the HTTP security server, the number of concurrent IKE negotiations, the number of new sessions handled by the SMTP security server, and so on.
- Detect and monitor suspicious activity. Network administrators can produce graphs and charts that document the number of alerts, rejected connections, or failed authentication attempts to identify possible intrusion attempts.

Select and Run a Traffic or System Counters View

When a **Traffic** or **System Counters** view runs, the results show in the SmartView Monitor client. A **Traffic** or **System Counter** view can run:

- From an existing view
- When you create a new view
- When you change an existing view

To run a Traffic or System Counters view:

- 1. In the SmartView Monitor client, select the **Traffic** or **System Counter** branch in the **Tree View**.
- 2. Double-click the Traffic or System Counter view that you want to run.

A list of available Security Gateways shows.

- 3. Select the Security Gateway, for which you want to run the selected **Traffic** or **System Counter** view.
- 4. Click OK.

The results of the selected view show in the SmartView Monitor client.

Recording a Traffic or Counter View

You can save a record of the Traffic or System Counter view results.

To record a traffic or counter view:

- 1. Run the Traffic or System Counters view.
- 2. Select the Traffic menu.
- 3. Select **Recording > Record**.

A Save As window shows.

- 4. Name the record.
- 5. Save it in the related directory.
- 6. Click Save.

The word **Recording** shows below the **Traffic** or **Counter** toolbar. The appearance of this word signifies that the view currently running is recorded and saved.

7. To stop recording, open the **Traffic** menu and select **Recording > Stop**.

A record of the view results is saved in the directory you selected in step 3 above.

Play the Results of a Recorded Traffic or Counter View

After you record a view, you can play it back. You can select **Play** or **Fast Play**, to see results change faster.

To play the results:

1. In the SmartView Monitor client, select **Traffic > Recording > Play**.

The Select Recorded File window shows.

- 2. Access the directory in which the recorded file is kept and select the related record.
- 3. Click Open.

The results of the selected recorded view start to run. The word **Playing** shows below the toolbar.

Pause or Stop the Results of a Recorded View that is Playing

- To pause the record select **Traffic > Recording > Pause**.
- Click Recording > Play to resume to play the Traffic or Counter view results recorded before.
- To stop the record select **Traffic > Recording > Stop**.

Monitoring Users

This section describes how to monitor users.

Users Solution

The User Monitor is an administrative feature. This feature lets you to keep track of Endpoint Security VPN users currently logged on to the specific Security Management Servers. The User Monitor provides you with a comprehensive set of filters which makes the view definition process user-friendly and highly efficient. It lets you to easily navigate through the obtained results.

With data on current open sessions, overlapping sessions, route traffic, connection time, and more, the User Monitor gives detailed information about connectivity experience of remote users. This SmartView Monitor feature lets you view real-time statistics about open remote access sessions.

If specific data are irrelevant for a given User, the column shows N/A for the User.

Run a Users View

When you run a Users view, the results show in the SmartView Monitor:

- From an existing view
- When you create a new view
- When you change an existing view

A Users view can be created and run for:

- One user
- All users
- A specific Security Gateway
- Mobile Access user

Run a User View for a Specified User

To run a user view for a specified user:

- 1. In SmartView Monitor > Tree View, click Users.
- 2. Click Get User by Name.

The User DN Filter window opens.

- 3. Enter the specified User DN in the area provided.
- 4. Click OK.

The view results show in the **Results View**.

Run a User View for all Users or Mobile Access Users

To run a user view for all users or Mobile Access users:

- 1. In SmartView Monitor > **Tree View**, click **Users**.
- 2. Click All Users or Mobile Access Users.

The view results show in the **Results View**.

Run a User View for a Specified Security Gateway

To run a user view for a specified Security Gateway:

- 1. In SmartView Monitor > Tree View, click Users.
- 2. Click Users by Gateway.

The Select Gateway window shows.

- 3. Select the Security Gateway, for which you want to run the view.
- 4. Click OK.

The view results show in the **Results View**.

Cooperative Enforcement Solution

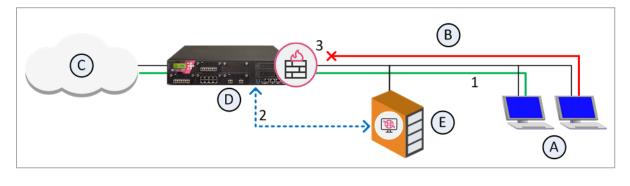
Cooperative Enforcement works with Check Point Endpoint Security Management Servers. This feature utilizes the Endpoint Security Management Server compliance function to make sure connections that come from different hosts across the internal network.

Endpoint Security Management Server is a centrally managed, multi-layered endpoint security solution that employs policy based security enforcement for internal and remote PCs. The Endpoint Security Management Server mitigates the risk of hackers, worms, spyware, and other security threats.

Features such as policy templates and application privilege controls enable administrators to easily develop, manage, and enforce Cooperative Enforcement.

With Cooperative Enforcement, a host that initiates a connection through a Security Gateway is tested for compliance. This increases the integrity of the network because it prevents hosts with malicious software components to access the network.

Cooperative Enforcement acts as a middle-man between hosts managed by an Endpoint Security Management Server and the Endpoint Security Management Server itself. It relies on the Endpoint Security Management Server compliance feature. It defines if a host is secure and can block connections that do not meet the defined prerequisites of software components.



_	Unauthorized
-	Authorized

- 1. The Endpoint Security client (A) in the internal network (B) opens a connection to the internet (C) through a Security Gateway (D).
- 2. Cooperative Enforcement starts to work on the first server's reply to the client.
- 3. The Security Gateway sees the client's compliance in its tables and queries the Endpoint Security Management Server (E).
- 4. When a reply is received, a connection from a compliant host to the internet is allowed.

If the client is non-compliant and Cooperative Enforcement is not in Monitor-only mode, the connection is closed.

Note - Scalable Platforms do not support Cooperative Enforcement.

NAT Environments

Cooperative Enforcement is not supported by all the NAT configurations.

For Cooperative Enforcement to work in a NAT environment, the Security Gateway and the Endpoint Security Management Server must recognize the same IP address of a client. If NAT causes the IP address received by Security Gateway to be different than the IP address received by the Endpoint Security Management Server, Cooperative Enforcement will not work.

Configuring Cooperative Enforcement

To configure Cooperative Enforcement:

From the Security Gateway's **Cooperative Enforcement** page, click **Authorize clients using Endpoint Security Server** to enable Cooperative Enforcement.

Monitor Only The Security Gateway requests authorization from the Endpoint Security Management Server, but connections are not dropped. Hosts can connect while the Security Gateway grants authorization. The Security Gateway generates logs for unauthorized hosts. You can add unauthorized hosts to the host's exception list or make those hosts compliant in other ways.

If Monitor Only is not selected, Cooperative Enforcement works in **Enforcement mode**. The Endpoint Security Firewall blocks non-compliant host connections. For HTTP connections, the client is notified that its host is non-compliant. The user can change the computer to make compliant. For example, the user can upgrade the version of the Endpoint Security client.

- Track unauthorized client status. Set a log, or alert option for the hosts that would be dropped if not in Monitor Only mode.
- In the Endpoint Security Server Selection section, select which Endpoint Security Management Server is used:
 - To use this machine, select Use Endpoint Security Server installed on this machine.
 - To use another machine, select a server from **Select Endpoint Security Server**. Click **New** to create a new server.
- In the **Client Authorization**. section, define exceptions for client authorization.
 - Check authorization of all clients Get authorization from all clients.
 - **Bypass authorization of the following clients** Allow clients in the selected groups to always connect, without authorization inspection. All other clients are inspected.
 - Check authorization only of the following clients Inspect authorization of clients from the selected groups. All other clients bypass authorization.

Non-Compliant Hosts by Gateway View

The **Non-Compliant Hosts by Gateway** view lets you to see Host IP addresses by Endpoint Security Management Server compliance:

- Authorized Enables access to the internet. If a Security Gateway has Authorized status, it does not show in the Non-Compliant Hosts by Gateway view.
- Unauthorized The Endpoint Security client is not compliant and the host is not authorized.
 - Monitor Only mode The Endpoint Security client has access to the internet, authorized or not.
 - Blocked mode Blocks access to the internet.
- No Endpoint Security client The Security Gateway is not related to an Endpoint Security client.

Third-Party Log Formats

You can import these third-party log formats to a Check Point Log Server:

- Syslog messages.
- Windows Events.
- SNMP Traps.

The Log Server converts the third-party log messages to a Check Point log. The log is then available for further analysis by SmartEvent.

Importing Syslog Messages

Many third-party devices use the *syslog* format for logging. The Log Server reformats the raw data to the Check Point log format to process third-party *syslog* messages.

The Log Server uses a syslog parser to convert syslog messages to the Check Point log format.

To import syslog messages, define your own syslog parser and install it on the Log Server.

SmartEvent can take the reformatted logs and convert them into security events.

Generating a Syslog Parser and Importing syslog Messages

To import syslog messages from products and vendors that are not supported out-of-the-box, see $\frac{sk55020}{2}$. This shows you how to:

- 1. Import some sample syslog messages to the Log Parsing Editor.
- 2. Define the mapping between syslog fields and the Check Point log fields.
- 3. Install the syslog parser on the Log Server.

After you imported the syslog messages to the Log Server, you can see them in SmartConsole, in the Logs & Events > Logs tab.

Note - Make sure that Access Control rules allow ELA traffic between the Syslog computer and the Log Server.

Configuring SmartEvent to Read Imported Syslog Messages

After you imported the syslog messages to the Log Server, you can forward them to SmartEvent Server (and other OPSEC LEA clients), as other Check Point logs. SmartEvent converts the syslog messages into security events.

To configure the SmartEvent Server to read logs from this Log Server:

- 1. Configure SmartEvent to read logs from the Log Server.
- In SmartEvent or in the SmartConsole event views, make a query to filter by the Product Name field. This field uniquely identifies the events that are created from the syslog messages.

Importing Windows Events

Check Point Windows Event Service is a Windows service application. It reads events from the Windows server and other configured Windows computers, converts them to Check Point logs, and places the data in the Check Point Log Server. The Log Server processes this data. The process can only be installed on a Windows computer, but it does not have to be the computer that runs Log Server. Therefore, Windows events can be processed even if the Log Server is installed on a different platform.

How Windows Event Service Works

To convert Windows events into Check Point logs:

- 1. Download the Windows Event Service agent WinEventToCPLog from the <u>Check Point</u> <u>Support Center</u>.
- 2. Install the service agent on a Windows server.

An administrator user name and password are necessary. The administrator name is one of these:

- A domain administrator responsible for the endpoint computer
- A local administrator on the endpoint computer
- 3. Create SIC between the Windows server and the Management Server.
- 4. Configure the Windows server to collect Windows events from required computers.

Administrator Support for WinEventToCPLog

WinEventToCPLog uses Microsoft APIs to read events from Windows operating system event files. To see these files, use the Windows Event Viewer.

WinEventToCPLog can read event files on the local machine, and can read log files from remote machines with the right privileges. This is useful when you make a central WinEventToCPLog server that forwards multiple Window hosts events to a Check Point Log Server.

To set the privileges, invoke the "WinEventToCPLog -s" to specify an administrator login and password.

These are the ways to access the files on a remote machine:

- To define a local administrator on the remote machine that their name matches the name registered with WinEventToCPLog.
- To define the administrator registered with WinEventToCPLog as an administrator in the domain. This administrator can access all of the machines in the domain.

Sending Windows Events to the Log Server

This section describes how to send Windows events to the Log Server. For advanced Windows event configuration, see $\underline{sk98861}$.

Creating an OPSEC Object for Windows Event Service

In SmartConsole, create an OPSEC object for Windows Event Service.

To create an OPSEC object for windows event service:

- From the Object Explore, click New > Server > OPSEC Application > Application.
 The OPSEC Applications Properties window shows.
- 2. Enter the name of the application that sends log files to the Log Server.
- 3. Click **New** to create a Host.
- 4. Enter an object name and the IP address of the machine that runs WinEventToCPLog.
- 5. Click OK.
- 6. Below Client Entities, select ELA.
- 7. Select Communication.
- 8. Enter an Activation Key, enter it again in the confirmation line, and keep a record of it for later use.
- 9. Click Initialize.

The system must report the trust status as *Initialized but trust not established*.

- 10. Click Close.
- 11. Click OK.
- 12. Publish the SmartConsole session.

Note - Make sure that Access Control rules allow ELA traffic between the Windows computer and the Log Server.

Configuring the Windows service

On the Windows host, configure the Windows service to send logs to the Log Server.

To configure the Windows service:

- 1. Install the WinEventToCPLog package from the Check Point Support Center.
- 2. When the installation completes, restart the computer.
- 3. Open a command prompt window and go to this location:
 - On Windows 32-bit:

C:\Program Files\CheckPoint\WinEventToCPLog\R65\bin\

• On Windows 64-bit:

C:\Program Files (x86)\CheckPoint\WinEventToCPLog\R65\bin\

4. Pull the certificate.

Instructions

a. Run:

windowEventToCPLog -pull cert

- b. Enter the IP address of the management server.
- c. Enter the name of the corresponding OPSEC Application object that you created in SmartConsole for the Windows events.
- d. Enter the Activation Key of the OPSEC object.
- 5. Restart the Check Point Windows Event Service.

Establishing Trust

Establish trust between the Security Management Server and the windows host.

To establish trust:

- 1. Edit the OPSEC Application that you created in SmartConsole for the Windows events.
- 2. Select Communication.
- 3. Make sure that the trust status is *Trust Established*.
- 4. Publish the SmartConsole session.

Configuring the Windows Audit Policy

On each machine that sends Windows Events, configure the Windows Audit Policy.

To configure the windows audit:

- 1. From the **Start** menu, click **Settings > Control Panel**.
- 2. Click Administrative Tools > Local Security Policy > Local Policies > Audit Policy.
- 3. Make sure that the **Security Setting** for the Policy **Audit Logon Events** is set to *Failure*. If not, double-click it and select *Failure*.
- 4. Open a command prompt window and go to this path:
 - On Windows 32 bit:

C:\Program Files\CheckPoint\WinEventToCPLog\R65\bin\

• On Windows 64 bit:

C:\Program Files (x86)\CheckPoint\WinEventToCPLog\R65\bin\

5. Run these commands:

windowEventToCPLog -I <*ipaddr*>, where <*ipaddr*> is the IP address of the Log Server that receives the Windows Events.

windowEventToCPLog -a <*ipaddr*>, where <*ipaddr*> is the IP address of each machine that sends Windows Events.

windowEventToCPLog -s, where you are prompted for an administrator name and the administrator password that to be registered with the **windowEventToCPLog** service.

The administrator that runs the **windowEventToCPLog** service must have permissions to access and read logs from the IP addressed defined in this procedure. This is the IP address of the computer that sends Windows events.

- 6. When you configure **windowEventToCPLog** to read Windows events from a remote machine, log in as the administrator. This makes sure that the administrator can access remote computer events.
- 7. Use the Microsoft Event Viewer to read the events from the remote machine.

Working with SNMP

SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) is an internet standard protocol. SNMP is used to send and receive management data, protocol data units (PDUs), to network devices. SNMP-compliant devices, called agents, keep data about themselves in Management Information Bases (MIBs) and resend this data to the SNMP requesters.

For more information, see <u>*R82 Gaia Administration Guide*</u> > Chapter System Management > Section SNMP.

Log Exporter

Overview

Check Point Log Exporter is an easy and secure method to export Check Point logs over the syslog protocol from a Management Server / Log Server.

You can configure the Log Exporter settings in SmartConsole or with CLI commands.

You can configure advanced settings in various configuration files.

Log Exporter supports:

- Multiple SIEM applications that can run a Syslog agent.
- Syslog over TCP or UDP.
- Multiple formats (Syslog, CEF, LEEF, JSON, and so on).
- Mutual authentication based on TLS 1.2.
- Export of Security logs, Audit logs, or both.
- Export of links to the relevant log card in SmartView and the log attachment (such as Forensics / Threat Emulation report).
- Filtering of logs.

Log Exporter is constantly updated. For the most up to date information about the supported versions and applications, see:

- sk122323 Log Exporter Check Point Log Export
- sk144192 Log Fields Description
- Note The Check Point App for Splunk uses the Log Exporter to seamlessly send logs from your Check Point Log Server to your Splunk server. This enables you to collect and analyze millions of logs from all Check Point technologies and platforms. For more information, see the *App for Splunk User Guide*.

How Log Exporter Works

Log Exporter is a multi-threaded daemon service which runs on a log server. The Log Exporter daemon reads each log, transforms it into the desired format and mapping, and sends it to the configured target.

On Multi-Domain Server / Multi-Domain Log Server, if Log Exporter is deployed on several Domains, each Domain Server has its own Log Exporter daemon service. If you export the logs to several targets, each target has its own Log Exporter daemon.

Log Exporter is implemented as the "E-T-L" procedure:

- Extract Reads incoming logs from itself, the Log Server / SmartEvent Server of the Security Gateways.
- **Transform** Changes the logs according to the configuration.
- Export Sends the logs to the configured target server.

Log Exporter stops exporting when disconnected from the 3rd party server and remembers the last position exported. After the connection is established again, Log Exporter automatically starts exporting logs from the last known position. Log Exporter is exporting both online and offline (if any) logs in parallel. In case the 3rd party server is slow, Log Exporter reduces the offline exporting rate to prioritize the online logs over the offline logs.

Note - From R81.20, you can monitor the rate of exported logs in CPView. For information, see <u>sk101878</u>.

Configuring Log Exporter in SmartConsole

Starting in R81, you can configure a Log Exporter directly from SmartConsole and link it to the relevant Log Servers.

Procedure:

- 1. Create a new Log Exporter/SIEM object in SmartConsole:
 - a. From the top, click **Objects > More object types > Server > Log Exporter/SIEM**.
 - b. In the **Object Name** field, enter the applicable name for the new Log Exporter.
 - c. From the left, click the General page:
 - i. In the Export Configuration section, select Enabled.
 - ii. In the Server Configuration section:
 - In the Target Server field, enter the IPv4 address or the FQDN of the destination server
 - In the Target Port field, enter the number of the listening port on the destination server
 - In the Protocol field, select the applicable protocol UDP (default) or TCP

- d. From the left, click the Data Manipulation page:
 - i. In the Format field, select the applicable format for the exported logs:
 - Syslog (default)
 - Common Event Format (CEF)
 - Log Event Extended Format (LEEF)
 - Generic
 - Splunk
 - LogRhythm
 - Json
 - ii. **Optional:** Select **Aggregate log updates before export** to export all logs with the full data.

By default, update logs contain the data that was changed compared to the last log for the same event.

e. From the left, click the Attachments page:

Log Exporter does not include attachments by default.

Optional: Select the applicable options to configure the log attachments:

- Add link to Log Details in SmartView
- Add link to Log Attachment in SmartView
- Add Log Attachment ID
- f. Click OK.

2. Configure the Management Server or Dedicated Log Server / SmartEvent Server object:

- a. From the left navigation panel, click Gateways & Servers.
- b. Open the Management Server or Dedicated Log Server / SmartEvent Server object.
- c. From the left tree, click **Logs** > **Export**.
- d. Click [+] and select the Log Exporter / SIEM object you configured earlier.
- e. Click OK.

3. Install the database:

- a. From the top, click **Menu > Install database**.
- b. Select all objects.

c. Click Install.



Important in a Multi-Domain Server environment - If you configured Log Exporter object(s) in the Global Domain and assigned Global Policy, you must install the database in SmartConsole connected to the applicable Domain Management Server.

After you upgrade a Management Server / Log Server / SmartEvent Server to a new version, you must:

- 1. Connect to the command line on the Management Server / Log Server / SmartEvent Server configured with Log Exporter.
- 2. Log in to the Expert mode.
- 3. In SmartConsole, click Menu > Install database > select all objects > click Install.
- **Note** During an upgrade to R81.20 and higher, the Log Exporter configuration is part of the upgrade.

Configuring Log Exporter in CLI

This section describes the Expert mode CLI commands to configure the Log Exporter settings.

Log Exporter Basic Configuration in CLI

Common method for creating and modifying Log Exporter targets.

To configure a new target for the exported logs:

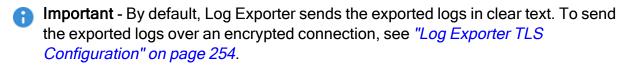
- 1. Connect to the command line on the Management Server / Log Server.
- 2. Log in to the Expert mode.
- 3. Configure the Log Exporter settings:

```
cp_log_export add name <Name of Log Exporter Configuration>
[domain-server {mds | all}] target-server <HostName or IP
address of Target Server> target-port <Port on Target Server>
protocol {tcp | udp} format {cef | generic | json | leef |
logrhythm | rsa | splunk | syslog} [--apply-now] [<Other
Optional Arguments>]
```

Parameters:

Parameter	Description
name <name log<br="" of="">Exporter Configuration></name>	 Configures the name of the Log Exporter configuration. Notes: Allowed characters are: Latin letters, digits ("0-9"), minus ("-"), underscore ("_"), and period ("."). Must start with a letter. The minimum length is two characters. This command creates a new target directory with the specified unique name in the \$EXPORTERDIR/targets/directory.

Parameter	Description
domain-server {mds all}	 On a Multi-Domain Server, specifies the applicable Domain Management Server context. On a Multi-Domain Log Server, specifies the applicable Domain Log Server context. This parameter is mandatory. "mds" (in small letters) - Exports audit logs from only the main MDS level. "all" (in small letters) - Exports audit logs from all Domains.
target-server <hostname or IP address of Target Server></hostname 	Configures the target server, to which Log Exporter sends the exported logs. You can enter an IP address or an FQDN.
target-port < <i>Port on</i> Target Server>	Configures the listening port on the target server, to which Log Exporter sends the exported logs.
protocol {tcp udp}	Configures the Layer 4 protocol for Syslog traffic - TCP or UDP.
format {}	Configures the format of exported logs: cef - CEF generic - Generic json - JSON leef - LEEF logrhythm - LogRhythm rsa - RSA splunk - Splunk syslog - Syslog (default)
apply-now	Optional. Automatically starts the new Log Exporter instance with the new settings. If you do not use this parameter, you must start the new Log Exporter instance manually with this command: cp_log_export restart
<other optional<br="">Arguments></other>	Optional. See "Log Exporter Advanced Configuration in CLI" on page 233.



Log Exporter Advanced Configuration in CLI

Advanced method for creating and modifying Log Exporter targets.

Syntax:

```
cp_log_export <Command-Name> [<Command-Arguments>]
```

To see a built-in help for a specific command:

```
cp_log_export <Command-Name> help
```

Commands

Name	Description
add	Configures a new Check Point Log Exporter.
	<pre>cp_log_export add name <name> target-server <target- Server> target-port <target-server-port> protocol {udp tcp} [Optional Arguments]</target-server-port></target- </name></pre>
delete	Removes an existing Log Exporter.
	cp_log_export delete name < <i>Name</i> >
reexport	Resets the current log position and exports all logs again based on the configuration.
	<pre>cp_log_export reexport name <name>apply-now</name></pre>
	<pre>cp_log_export reexport name <name> start-position <position exported="" last="" log="" of="">apply-now</position></name></pre>
	<pre>cp_log_export reexport name <name> start-position <position gap="" of="" start=""> end-position <position end="" gap="" of="">apply-now</position></position></name></pre>
restart	Restarts a Log Exporter process.
	<pre>cp_log_export restart name <name></name></pre>
set	Updates an existing Log Exporter configuration.
	cp_log_export set name <name> [<optional arguments="">]</optional></name>
show	Shows the current Log Exporter configuration.
	cp_log_export show [<optional arguments="">]</optional>
start	Starts an existing Log Exporter process.
	cp_log_export start name < <i>Name</i> >
status	Shows a Log Exporter overview status.
	cp_log_export status [<optional arguments="">]</optional>
stop	Stops an existing Log Exporter process.
	cp_log_export stop name <name></name>

Command Arguments

Name	Description	Requ ired for "add" com mand	Requ ired for "set" com mand	Requ ired for "dele te" com mand	Req uired for "rec onf" com man d	Req uired for "rest art", "sho w", "stat us", "star t", "sto p" com man d	Requ ired for "reex port" com mand
apply-now	Applies immediately any change that was done with the "add", "set", "delete", or "reexport" command.	Optio nal	Optio nal	Man dator y	N/A	N/A	Man dator y
ca-cert < <i>Path</i> >	Specifies the full path to the CA certificate file *.pem. Important - Applicable only when the value of the "encrypted" argument is "true".	Optio nal	Optio nal	N / A	N/A	N / A	N/A

Name	Description	Requ ired for "add" com mand	Requ ired for "set" com mand	Requ ired for "dele te" com mand	Req uired for "rec onf" com man d	Req uired for "rest art", "sho w", "stat us", "star t", "sto p" com man d	Requ ired for "reex port" com mand
client-cert < <i>Path</i> >	Specifies the full path to the client certificate *.p12. Important - Applicable only when the value of the "encrypted" argument is "true".	Optio nal	Optio nal	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
client- secret < <i>Phrase</i> >	Specifies the challenge phrase used to create the client certificate *.p12. Important - Applicable only when the value of the "encrypted" argument is "true".	Optio nal	Optio nal	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

Name	Description	Requ ired for "add" com mand	Requ ired for "set" com mand	Requ ired for "dele te" com mand	Req uired for "rec onf" com man d	Req uired for "rest art", "sho w", "stat us", "star t", "sto p" com man d	Requ ired for "reex port" com mand
domain- server {mds all}	On a Multi-Domain Server, specifies the applicable Domain Management Server context. On a Multi-Domain Log Server, specifies the applicable Domain Log Server context. Important:	Man dator y	Man dator y	Man dator y	N/A	Opti onal	Man dator y
	 "mds" (in small letters) - Exports all logs from only the main MDS level. "all" (in small letters) - Exports all logs from all Domains. 						

Name	Description	Requ ired for "add" com mand	Requ ired for "set" com mand	Requ ired for "dele te" com mand	Req uired for "rec onf" com man d	Req uired for "rest art", "sho w", "stat us", "star t", "sto p" com man d	Requ ired for "reex port" com mand
enabled {true false}	Specifies whether to allow the Log Exporter to start when you run the "cpstart" or "mdsstart" command. Default: true	Optio nal	Optio nal	N/A	N/A	N/A	N / A
encrypted {true false}	Specifies whether to use TSL (SSL) encryption to send the logs. Default: false	Optio nal	Optio nal	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
end-position < <i>Position</i> >	Specifies the end position, up to which to export the logs.	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	Optio nal
export- attachment- ids {true false}	Specifies whether to add a field to the exported logs that represents the ID of log's attachment (if exists). Default: false	Optio nal	Optio nal	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

Name	Description	Requ ired for "add" com mand	Requ ired for "set" com mand	Requ ired for "dele te" com mand	Req uired for "rec onf" com man d	Req uired for "rest art", "sho w", "stat us", "star t", "sto p" com man d	Requ ired for "reex port" com mand
export- attachment- link {true false}	Specifies whether to add a field to the exported logs that represents a link to SmartView that shows the log card and automatically opens the attachment. Default: false	Optio nal	Optio nal	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
export-link {true false}	Specifies whether to add a field to the exported logs that represents a link to SmartView that shows the log card. Default: false	Optio nal	Optio nal	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

Name	Description	Requ ired for "add" com mand	Requ ired for "set" com mand	Requ ired for "dele te" com mand	Req uired for "rec onf" com man d	Req uired for "rest art", "sho w", "stat us", "star t", "sto p" com man d	Requ ired for "reex port" com mand
<pre>export-link- ip {true false}</pre>	Specifies whether to make the links to SmartView use a custom IP address (for example, for a Log Server behind NAT). Important - Applicable only when the value of the "export- link" argument is "true", or the value of the "export- attachment- link" argument is "true". Default: false	Optio nal	Optio nal	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
export-log- position {true false}	Specifies whether to export the log's position. Default: false	Optio nal	Optio nal	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

Name	Description	Requ ired for "add" com mand	Requ ired for "set" com mand	Requ ired for "dele te" com mand	Req uired for "rec onf" com man d	Req uired for "rest art", "sho w", "stat us", "star t", "sto p" com man d	Requ ired for "reex port" com mand
<pre>filter- action-in {"Action1"," Action2", false}</pre>	Specifies whether to export all logs that contain a specific value in the "Action" field. Each value must be surrounded by double quotes (""). Multiple values are supported and must be separated by a comma without spaces. To see all valid values: 1. In SmartConsole , go to the Logs & Events view and open the Logs tab. 2. In the top query field, enter action: and a letter.	Optio nal	Optio nal	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

Name	Description	Requ ired for "add" com mand	Requ ired for "set" com mand	Requ ired for "dele te" com mand	Req uired for "rec onf" com man d	Req uired for "rest art", "sho w", "stat us", "star t", "sto p" com man d	Requ ired for "reex port" com mand
	 Accept Block Bypass Detect Drop HTTPS Bypass HTTPS Inspect Prevent Reject Important - This parameter replaces any other filter configuration that was declared earlier on this field directly in the filtering XML file. Other field filters are not overwritten. 						

Name	Description	Requ ired for "add" com mand	Requ ired for "set" com mand	Requ ired for "dele te" com mand	Req uired for "rec onf" com man d	Req uired for "rest art", "sho w", "stat us", "star t", "sto p" com man d	Requ ired for "reex port" com mand
<pre>filter- blade-in {"Blade1","B lade2", false}</pre>	Specifies whether to export all logs that contain a specific value in the " Blade " field (the object name of the Software Blade that generated these logs). Each value must be surrounded by double quotes (""). Multiple values are supported and must be separated by a comma without spaces. To see all valid values:	Optio nal	Optio nal	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
	 In SmartConsole , go to the Logs & Events view and open the Logs tab. 						

Name	Description	Requ ired for "add" com mand	Requ ired for "set" com mand	Requ ired for "dele te" com mand	Req uired for "rec onf" com man d	Req uired for "rest art", "sho w", "stat us", "star t", "sto p" com man d	Requ ired for "reex port" com mand
	 In the top query field, enter blade: and a letter. 						
	Examples of values:						
	 Anti-Bot Firewall HTTPS Inspection Identity Awareness IPS 						
	Valid Software Blade families:						
	 Access TP Endpoint Mobile 						

Name	Description	Requ ired for "add" com mand	Requ ired for "set" com mand	Requ ired for "dele te" com mand	Req uired for "rec onf" com man d	Req uired for "rest art", "sho w", "stat us", "star t", "sto p" com man d	Requ ired for "reex port" com mand
	important - This parameter replaces any other filter configuration that was declared earlier on this field directly in the filtering XML file. Other field filters are not overwritten.						

Name	Description	Requ ired for "add" com mand	Requ ired for "set" com mand	Requ ired for "dele te" com mand	Req uired for "rec onf" com man d	Req uired for "rest art", "sho w", "stat us", "star t", "sto p" com man d	Requ ired for "reex port" com mand
<pre>filter- origin-in {"Origin1"," Origin2", false}</pre>	Specifies whether to export all logs that contain a specific value in the " Origin " field (the object name of the Security Gateway / Cluster Member that generated these logs). Each origin value must be surrounded by double quotes (""). Multiple values are supported and must be separated by a comma without spaces.	Optio nal	Optio nal	N / A	N / A	N/A	N/A

Name	Description	Requ ired for "add" com mand	Requ ired for "set" com mand	Requ ired for "dele te" com mand	Req uired for "rec onf" com man d	Req uired for "rest art", "sho w", "stat us", "star t", "sto p" com man d	Requ ired for "reex port" com mand
	important - This parameter replaces any other filter configuration that was declared earlier on this field directly in the filtering XML file. Other field filters are not overwritten.						
format {generic cef json leef logrhythm rsa splunk syslog}	Specifies the format, in which the logs are exported. Default: syslog	Optio nal	Optio nal	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

Name	Description	Requ ired for "add" com mand	Requ ired for "set" com mand	Requ ired for "dele te" com mand	Req uired for "rec onf" com man d	Req uired for "rest art", "sho w", "stat us", "star t", "sto p" com man d	Requ ired for "reex port" com mand
name "< <i>Name</i> >"	Specifies the unique name of the Log Exporter configuration.	Man dator y	Man dator y	Man dator y	Opti onal. By defa ult, appli es to all.	Opti onal. By defa ult, appli es to all.	Man dator y

Name	Description	Requ ired for "add" com mand	Requ ired for "set" com mand	Requ ired for "dele te" com mand	Req uired for "rec onf" com man d	Req uired for "rest art", "sho w", "stat us", "star t", "sto p" com man d	Requ ired for "reex port" com mand
	 Notes: Allowed characters are: Latin letters, digits ("0-9"), minus ("-"), underscore ("_"), and period ("."). Must start with a letter. The minimum length is two characters. The minimum length is two characters. The "add" command creates a new target directory with the specified unique name in the \$EXPORTERD IR/target s/ directory. 						

Name	Description	Requ ired for "add" com mand	Requ ired for "set" com mand	Requ ired for "dele te" com mand	Req uired for "rec onf" com man d	Req uired for "rest art", "sho w", "stat us", "star t", "sto p" com man d	Requ ired for "reex port" com mand
protocol {tcp udp}	Specifies the Layer 4 Transport protocol to use (TCP or UDP). There is no default value.	Man dator y	Optio nal	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

Name	Description	Requ ired for "add" com mand	Requ ired for "set" com mand	Requ ired for "dele te" com mand	Req uired for "rec onf" com man d	Req uired for "rest art", "sho w", "stat us", "star t", "sto p" com man d	Requ ired for "reex port" com mand
<pre>read-mode {raw semi- unified}</pre>	Specifies the mode, in which to read the log files. • raw - Specifies to export log records without any unification. • semi- unified - Specifies to export log records with step-by-step unification. That is, for each log record, export a record that unifies this record with all previously- encountered records with the same ID.	Optio nal	Optio nal	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

Name	Description	Requ ired for "add" com mand	Requ ired for "set" com mand	Requ ired for "dele te" com mand	Req uired for "rec onf" com man d	Req uired for "rest art", "sho w", "stat us", "star t", "sto p" com man d	Requ ired for "reex port" com mand
	Default : semi- unified Default : raw						
reconnect- interval { <i><number></number></i> default}	Specifies the interval (in minutes) after which the Log Exporter must connect again to the target server after the connection is lost. To disable, enter the value "default". There is no default value.	Optio nal	Optio nal	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
start- position < <i>Position</i> >	Specifies the start position, from which to export the logs.	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	Optio nal
target-port <target- Server-Port></target- 	Specifies the listening port on the target server, to which you export the logs.	Man dator y	Optio nal	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

Name	Description	Requ ired for "add" com mand	Requ ired for "set" com mand	Requ ired for "dele te" com mand	Req uired for "rec onf" com man d	Req uired for "rest art", "sho w", "stat us", "star t", "sto p" com man d	Requ ired for "reex port" com mand
target- server <target- Server></target- 	Specifies the IP address or FQDN of the target server, to which you export the logs.	Man dator y	Optio nal	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
time-in- milli {true false}	Specifies whether to export logs with the time resolution in milliseconds. Requires Security Gateways R81 and higher. Default: false	Optio nal	Optio nal	N / A	N/A	N / A	N/A

Log Exporter TLS Configuration

Log Exporter can export logs over an encrypted connection using the TLS protocol.

Only mutual authentication is allowed.

For mutual authentication, Log Exporter requires these certificates:

- A Certificate Authority (CA) certificate file in the PEM format (this is the CA that signed both the client (Log Exporter side) and target server certificates)
- A client certificate in the P12 format on the Management Server / Log Server with Log Exporter
- Notes:
 - The Management Server / Log Server with Log Exporter must be able to connect to the Certificate Authority.
 - In addition to these two certificates, a third certificate should be installed on the target server (based on the server requirement).
 - It is possible to use self-signed certificates.

If you do not already have the required certificates, the procedure below is an **example** of how to create the required certificates.

The procedure below uses the opensol commands on a Linux server (non-Check Point).

To create a self signed Certificate Authority (CA)

Run this if you do not already have a trusted CA certificates in the PEM format:

1. Generate the root CA key and do not give it to anyone:

```
openssl genrsa -out RootCA.key 2048
```

2. Generate the root CA certificate in the PEM format:

```
openssl req -x509 -new -nodes -key RootCA.key -days 2048 - out RootCA.pem
```

- 3. Enter the Distinguished Name (DN) information for the certificate.
 - Common Name(CN) is the exact Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) of the host on which you use the certificate.
 - All other fields are optional. If you purchase an SSL certificate from a Certificate Authority, these additional fields may be required.

To create a client certificate file in the P12 format (for Log Exporter)

1. Generate the client key and do not give it to anyone:

openssl genrsa -out log exporter.key 2048

2. Generate the client certificate sign request:

openssl req -new -key log_exporter.key -out log_exporter.csr

3. Use the CA files to sign the certificate:

```
openssl x509 -req -in log_exporter.csr -CA RootCA.pem -CAkey
RootCA.key -CAcreateserial -out log_exporter.crt -days 2048
-sha256
```

4. Convert the certificate file to the P12 format:

```
openssl pkcs12 -inkey log_exporter.key -in log_exporter.crt
-export -out log_exporter.p12
```

Note - The challenge phrase used in this conversion is required in the "log_ exporter" TLS configuration.

After you created the required certificates, you must update the security parameters on the Check Point Management Server / Log Server.

To update the security parameters

- 1. Connect to the command line on the Management Server / Log Server.
- 2. Log in to the Expert mode.
- 3. On a Multi-Domain Server / Multi-Domain Log Server, switch to the required Domain:

```
mdsenv <IP Address or Name of Domain Management Server /
Domain Log Server>
```

4. Go to the directory with the applicable Log Exporter Configuration:

cd \$EXPORTERDIR/targets/<Name of Log Exporter Configuration>

5. Create a new directory for the certificates:

```
mkdir -v certificates
cd certificates
```

6. Transfer these certificate files to the new directory "certificates":

- RootCA.pem
- log exporter.p12
- 7. Give the certificate files the execution permission:

chmod -v +r RootCA.pem chmod -v +r log_exporter.p12

8. Go to the directory with the applicable Log Exporter Configuration:

cd \$EXPORTERDIR/targets/<Name of Log Exporter Configuration>

- 9. Update the targetConfiguration.xml file:
 - a. Edit the file:

vi targetConfiguration.xml

- b. Configure the full path to the new certificate files and the challenge phrase used to create the P12 certificate.
- c. Save the changes in the file and exit the editor.

To create a target server certificate

1. Generate the server key and do not give it to anyone:

openssl genrsa -out syslogServer.key 2048

2. Generate the server certificate sign request:

openssl req -new -key syslogServer.key -out syslogServer.csr

3. Use the CA files to sign the certificate:

```
openssl x509 -req -in syslogServer.csr -CA RootCA.pem -CAkey
RootCA.key -CAcreateserial -out syslogServer.crt -days 2048
-sha256
```

Log Exporter Advanced Configuration Parameters

After deploying a new instance of Log Exporter, all configuration files for that deployment are located in this directory:

\$EXPORTERDIR/targets/<Name of Log Exporter Configuration>/

- Note On a Multi-Domain Server / Multi-Domain Log Server, the value of the environment variable EXPORTERDIR changes automatically when you switch between Domain server contexts with the mdsenv command.
- **Important:**
 - You must restart the Log Exporter instance for the new settings to take effect. Run the "cp log export restart" command.
 - For information on how to backup and restore your Log Exporter configuration, see <u>sk127653</u>.

You can configure specific parameters to control how Log Exporter exports the logs.

Target Server Configuration

The Log Exporter configuration for the target server is saved in this file:

```
$EXPORTERDIR/targets/<Name of Log Exporter
Configuration>/targetConfiguration.xml
```

These are some of the configuration options:

Parameter	Description	Valid / Default Values
<version></version>	Current Log Exporter version - used for upgrades.	
<is_enabled>enabled></is_enabled>	Determines if the Log Exporter process is monitored by the watch dog.	true false

Destination Parameters

Parameter	Description	Valid / Default Values
type	Reserved for future use.	
<ip></ip>	The IP address of the target server that receives the logs.	Any IPv4 address or FQDN
<port></port>	The port on the target.	Any valid port number
<protocol></protocol>	The protocol used in the connection.	TCP or UDP
<reconnect_ interval></reconnect_ interval>	Determines how frequently to start the connection to the target server after it is lost.	Number of minutes

Security Parameters

These are discussed in more detail in "Log Exporter TLS Configuration" on page 254.

Parameter	Description	Valid / Default Values
<security></security>	Determines if the connection is sent in clear text or encrypted.	 clear - clear text (this is the default) tls - encrypted
<pem_ca_file></pem_ca_file>	The location of the root Certificate Authority certificate file in the PEM format.	
<p12_certificate_file>certificate_file></p12_certificate_file>	The location of the client key pair in the P12 format.	
<client_certificate_ challenge_phrase>certificate_challenge_ phrase></client_certificate_ 	The challenge phrase that was used to create the P12 certificate. The value is hashed when the Log Exporter is started or restarted.	

Source Parameters

Parameter	Description	Valid / Default Values
<folder></folder>	The path where the log files are located.	Default location is \$FWDIR/log/
<log_files>files></log_files>	Determines which log records to export or how far back to read the log records from the \$FWDIR/log/fw.log file.	<pre> <number> - reads logs from the specific number (default=1) of days back (recommended) <specific file="" name=""> - reads logs from the specified file on-line If no value is specified, uses 'on-line' </specific></number></pre>
<log_types>types></log_types>	Determines which logs to export.	 all - Security and Audit (default) log - Security only audit - Audit only
<read_mode>mode></read_mode>	Determines whether to export complete logs or only their delta.	 semi-unified (default) raw

Resolver Parameters

Parameter	Description	Valid / Default Values
<mappingconfiguration>nfiguration></mappingconfiguration>	Configures the XML file that contains the log field mapping scheme. If left empty, uses the default settings.	Default values are based on the format
<exportallfields>trueields></exportallfields>	When this field is set to 'true', all log fields are sent regardless of whether they appear in the mapping scheme, except for specifically black-listed fields in the relevant log format mapping file (<exported>falseported>). When this field is set to 'false', only those fields which appear in the relevant log format mapping file are sent (with exported flag set to 'true': <exported>trueorted>).</exported></exported>	 tru fal se

Format Parameters

Parameter	Description	Valid / Default Values
<formatheaderfile></formatheaderfile>	Configures the XML file that contains the log header format scheme. If left empty, uses the default settings.	Default values are based on the format

SmartView Link Parameters

Parameter	Description	Valid / Default Values
export_log_ link	Adds a field to the exported log that represents a link to SmartView that shows the log card.	<pre>true false (default)</pre>
export_ attachment_ link	Adds a field to the exported log that represents a link to SmartView that shows the log card and automatically opens the attachment.	<pre>true false (default)</pre>
export_link_ ip	Makes the above two links use a customized IP address (for example, for a NATed Log Server).	 IPv4 address empty (default)

Filter Parameters

This configuration allows Log Exporter instance to filter out the Security Gateway traffic logs for several Software Blades (VPN-1 & Firewall-1, HTTPS Inspection, and Security Gateway/Management).

Note:

- Security Gateway session logs are still exported (generated by tracking a Security Gateway rule per session).
- HTTPS Inspection logs, Security Gateway logs generated not from rules, and a few NAT update logs are still exported.

Parameter	Description	Valid / Default Values
<filter filter_out_<br="">by_ connection="false"></filter>	Determines whether to filtered out the Access logs. When set to true, VPN-1 & Firewall-1 logs are filtered out (HTTPS Inspection logs are still exported). Note - These are the only Software Blade filters currently supported.	■ true ■ false

Format Configuration

The Log Exporter format configuration is saved in these files:

```
$EXPORTERDIR/targets/<Name of Log Exporter</pre>
Configuration>/conf/*FormatDefinition.xml
```

P Important - Do not edit the original *FormatDefinition.xml files. Doing so causes a data loss after an upgrade. Instead, create a copy of the file and modify the copied file, while leaving the original intact. After modifying the copied file, refer to it (using a full path) in the <formatHeaderFile> element in the applicable targetConfiguration.xml file.

Body

Parameter	Descri ption	Syslog	Spl unk	CEF	LEE F	Gen eric	LogR hythm	RSA
<start_ message_ body></start_ message_body>	The charact er that preced es the log data payloa d.	[
<end_message_ body>message_body></end_message_ 	The charact er that follows the log data payloa d.]						
<message_ separator><!--<br-->message_ separator></message_ 	The delimet er that separat es logs.	 (= ='\n')	 0; ('\ n')	 0; ('\ n')	 0; ('\ n')	('\ n')	 ('\ n')	 0; ('\ n')

Log Exporter Advanced Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Descri ption	Syslog	Spl unk	CEF	LEE F	Gen eric	LogR hythm	RSA
<fields_ separatator> </fields_ separatator>	The delimet er that separat es log fields.	'; ' (semi colon, space)	 (pip e)	(spa ce)	� 9; (<t A B>)</t 	' ' ce)	l (pipe)	' ' (spa ce)
<field_value_ separatator> value_ separatator></field_value_ 	The assign ment operato r.	:	=	=	=	=	=	=
<value_ encapsulatio n_ start>" </value_ encapsulatio n_start>	The value encaps ulation operato r (start).				11	T		
<value_ encapsulatio n_ start>" </value_ encapsulatio n_start>	The value encaps ulation operato r (end).	**			"	"		

Parameter	Descri ption	Syslog	Spl unk	CEF	LEE F	Gen eric	LogR hythm	RSA
<escape_ chars> <char> <orig><!--<br-->orig> <escaped > </escaped </orig></char> </escape_ chars>	To escape unwant ed charact ers. The escape functio nality replace s the string that is encaps ulated by the orig tags with the string encaps ulated by the string encaps	;\> \\ - -> ' ']> \]	- -> ; = - -> \=  0; > ;	; \ > \ = - -> \=  0; >	= - \=  0; > , ,	<pre>\> \\ "> k#1 0;> , '</pre>	> ; => \= > '	= - \=  0; >

Log Exporter Advanced Configuration Parameters

Header

Parameter	Description	Default values for sysl	Default values for CEF
<header_ format></header_ format>	The delimeter between the header values and the number of values. Every {} is replaced with one value.	''(space)	



- To add a constant string to the header, add the string to the <header_ format> tag value.
- To add a new field to the header, add a new header format replacement string (for example: { }) to the <header_format> tag and add the applicable information in the <headers> tag.

Field Mapping Configuration

Every format has its own predefined fields configuration file that allow to change the name / value of the exported field, filter out irrelevant fields, and so on.

The Log Exporter format configuration is saved in these files:

```
$EXPORTERDIR/targets/<Name of Log Exporter
Configuration>/conf/*FieldsMapping.xml
```

Important - Do not edit the original *FieldsMapping.xml files. Doing so causes a data loss after an upgrade. Instead, create a copy of the file and modify the copied file, while leaving the original intact. After modifying the copied file, refer to it (using a full path) in the <formatHeaderFile> element in the applicable targetConfiguration.xml file.

Parameter	Description	Valid / Default Values
	Some fields appear in the tables based on the log format. This information can be found in the .elg log file - one entry for every new field. A field can appear in multiple tables. Each distinct instance is considered a new field.	
<exported></exported>	Optional You can use the exported true/false tag in the mapping configuration file to filter out specific fields. Alternatively, if the exportAllFields tag in the targetConfiguration.xml file is set to false, only those fields which are listed in the mapping file are exported.	<pre>true false</pre>
<origname></origname>	The name of the field that is mapped to <i><dstname></dstname></i>	
<dstname></dstname>	The new mapping scheme name for the applicable field.	
<required></required>	Optional When set to true, only logs that contain this field are exported.	■ true ■ false

Log Exporter Instructions for Specific SIEM

This section shows how to configure SIEM applications to receive logs optimally.

Notes:

- When using Client Authentication, you must provide the absolute path to the client certificate.
- Make sure the "Common Name" is unique in every certificate.

Rsyslog

Procedure

By default, Rsyslog is not configured to use the RFC 5424 timestamp format.

Therefore, you should manually change the setting on the Rsyslog server for it to be compliant with the Log Exporter output format.

1. Edit the /etc/rsyslog.conf file:

```
vi /etc/rsyslog.conf
```

2. Comment out this line (add the # character in the beginning), if it is not commented out already:

```
#"$ActionFileDefaultTemplate RSYSLOG TraditionalFileFormat"
```

3. Add this line in the file:

\$ActionFileDefaultTemplate RSYSLOG_SyslogProtocol23Format

- 4. Save the changes in the file and exit the editor.
- 5. Restart the Rsyslog service:

```
service rsyslog restart
```

ArcSight

Procedure

ArcSight recommends to name the server certificate file as "syslog-ng".

To name the certificate:

Convert the key to the P12 format:

```
openssl pkcs12 -inkey syslogServer.key -in syslogServer.crt -
export -out syslog-ng.p12 -name "syslogng-alias" -password
pass:changeit
```

To make sure the value of the environment variable ARCSIGHT_HOME is the connector install directory:

1. Run the certificates manager on the Linux KDE console:

\$ARCSIGHT HOME/current/bin/arcsight agent keytoolgui

2. From the File menu, open the keystore:

\$ARCSIGHT HOME/current/jre/lib/security/cacerts

The password "changeit".

- 3. From the menu, select Import Trusted Certificate.
- 4. From the file dialog, select **Ca.pem** and save it.
- 5. Save the changes and close the certificate manager.

To edit the "agent.properties" file to enable mutual authentication:

1. Edit the file:

vi \$ARCSIGHT HOME//current/user/agent/agent.properties

2. Change this value to true:

```
syslogng.mutual.auth.enabled=true
```

3. Add these lines to the end:

syslogng.tls.keystore.file=user/agent/syslog-ng.p12

```
syslogng.tls.keystore.alias=syslogng-alias
```

4. Restart the connector service:

/etc/init.d/arc connector name restart

Splunk

Procedure

1. Generate the server certificate file in the PEM format:

```
cat syslogServer.crt syslogServer.key RootCA.pem >
splunk.pem
```

- 2. Update the inputs.conf file on the Splunk server:
 - a. Edit the file:

```
vi /opt/splunk/etc/apps/<Name of the app, where the
configuration is saved>/local/inputs.conf
```

b. Configure these settings to use TLS:

```
[SSL]
serverCert = <Full path to CA PEM file>
sslPassword = <Challenge Password>
requireClientCert = true
[tcp-ssl://<Port>]
index = <Index>
```

- c. Save the changes in the file and exit the editor.
- 3. Update the server.conf file on the Splunk server:
 - a. Edit the file:

```
vi /opt/splunk/etc/system/local/server.conf
```

b. Configure these settings:

```
[sslConfig]
sslRootCAPath = <Full path to CA PEM file>
[SSL]
cipherSuite = TLSv1+HIGH:TLSv1.2+HIGH:@STRENGTH
```

- c. Save the changes in the file and exit the editor.
- 4. Restart the Splunk service:

```
/opt/splunk/bin/splunk restart
```

QRadar

Procedure

1. In the Authentication Mode field, select TLS And Client Authentication.

When you use **Client Authentication**, you must provide the absolute path to the client certificate.

- 2. Upload the Check Point certificate and private key to QRadar to the same directory.
- 3. Enter the absolute path to the uploaded files in the **Provide Certificate** option.

Add a log source	
Log Source Name	
Log Source Description	
Log Source Type	Check Point ~
Protocol Configuration	TLS Syslog -
Log Source Identifier	
TLS Listen Port 💡	6514
Authentication Mode 🕜	TLS And Client Authentication
Client Certificate Path 🕜	
Certificate Type 💡	Provide Certificate
Provided Server Certificate Path 💡	
Provided Private Key Path 💡	
Maximum Connections 👔	50
TLS Protocols 💡	TLS 1.2 and above -
Enabled	
Credibility	5 -
Target Event Collector	eventcollector0 :: bizdev -
Coalescing Events	

Transition from LEA to Log Exporter

To move from the existing LEA connector to the new Log Exporter:

1. In SmartConsole, delete the OPSEC application object if it is the only use for the OPSEC application. If not, remove the LEA client entity.

General A	MON Options		
Name:	ОрѕесАрр		
Comment:			
Color:	•		
Host:	OpsecHost	▼ New	
Application	properties		
Vendor:	User defined	•	
Product:		Version:	Ŧ
Activ	vate		
Server I	Entities	Client Entities	
CVP UFP AMC		V ELA V LEA SAM CPMI OMI	
		UAA	

- 2. If this is the only OPSEC LEA client, configure the *\$FWDIR/conf/fwopsec.conf* file to not allow LEA:
 - a. Connect to the command line on the Management Server / Log Server with Log Exporter.
 - b. Log in to the Expert mode.
 - c. Back up the current file:

```
cp -v $FWDIR/conf/fwopsec.conf{,_BKP}
```

d. Edit the current file:

vi \$FWDIR/conf/fwopsec.conf

e. Comment out these lines (add the # character in the beginning):

From	То
lea_server auth_port 18184	# lea_server auth_port 18184
lea_server port 0	# lea_server port 0

- f. Save the changes in the file and exit the editor.
- 3. Configure the Log Exporter settings in one of these ways:
 - In SmartConsole "Configuring Log Exporter in SmartConsole" on page 227
 - In CLI see "Configuring Log Exporter in CLI" on page 230

Note - Reading logs through LEA, which were configured manually in the SmartLog custom settings file, is not available in R80.x.

Transition from CPLogToSyslog to Log Exporter

To move from the existing CPLogToSyslog to the new Log Exporter:

- 1. Use CPUSE to uninstall the CPLogToSyslog package. See section 4-C in <u>sk92449</u>.
- 2. Configure the Log Exporter settings in one of these ways:
 - In SmartConsole "Configuring Log Exporter in SmartConsole" on page 227
 - In CLI see "Configuring Log Exporter in CLI" on page 230

Log Exporter - Appendix

Special Log Fields

Field	Description
loguid	Log Unification ID. Some Check Point logs are updated over time. Updated logs have the same Log UID value. Check Point SmartLog client correlates those updates into a single unified log. When the update logs are sent to 3rd party servers, they arrive as distinct logs. Administrators can use the "loguid" field to correlate updated logs and get the full event chain. Note - Log Exporter's new semi-unified mode correlates all previous logs into one, so the latest log always shows the complete data. Examples of updated logs: The total amount of bytes sent and received over time.
	 The severity field which is updated over time as more information becomes available.
hll_key	High Level Log Key. This concept was introduced in R80.10. Multiple connection logs can comprise one session with one shared HLL Key. For example, when you browse to a webpage, the Security Gateway may generate multiple connection logs which are related to the same session. Connection logs which are part of the same session share the same "hll_key" value.

Syslog-NG Listener Configuration

We recommend you use the syslog-protocol flag when you configure a source on a Syslog NG server.

For example:

```
source s_network { network(transport("tcp") port(514) flags
(syslog-protocol) ); };
```

Splunk Listener Configuration

We recommend that you add these time settings to your "sourcetype":

- TIME_FORMAT = %s
- TIME_PREFIX = time=
- MAX_TIMESTAMP_LOOKAHEAD = 15

ArcSight Listener Configuration

The Log Exporter solution does not work with the OPSEC LEA connector. Instead, you must install the ArcSight Syslog-NG connector.

ArcSight Common Event Format (CEF) Mapping

CEF is an extensible, text-based format that supports multiple device types by offering the most relevant information. Message syntax is reduced to work with ESM normalization. Specifically, CEF defines a syntax for log records comprised of a standard header and a variable extension, formatted as key-value pairs. The CEF format can be used with on-premises devices by implementing the ArcSight Syslog SmartConnector. CEF can also be used by cloud-based service providers by implementing the SmartConnector for ArcSight Common Event Format REST.

CEF Header Format

ltem	Versi on	Devic e Vend or	Devic e Produ ct	Devic e Versi on	Device Event Class ID	Name	Severity
Defau It	CEF:0	Check Point	Log Updat e	Check Point	Log	Log	0

ltem	Versi on	Devic e Vend or	Devic e Produ ct	Devic e Versi on	Device Event Class ID	Name	Severity
Value s	-		Produ ct Name (Blad e)	-	 Attack Name Protect ion Type Verdict Match ed Categ ory DLP Data Type Applic ation Categ ory Applic ation Proper ties 	 Protect ion Name Applic ation Name Messa ge Info Servic e ID Servic e 	 Applic ation Risk Risk Severit y

QRadar Log Event Extended Format (LEEF) Mapping

The LEEF is a customized event format for IBM Security QRadar.

LEEF Header Format

Item	LEEF Version	Vendor	Product	Version	EventID
Default	LEEF:2.0	Check Point	Log Update	1.0	Check Point Log
Values	-	-	Product Name (Blade)	-	 Protection Name Application Name Action

Note - The time format is not compliant with the official LEEF format.

As there is currently no Epoch time format, Log Exporter with LEEF format is only partially supported.

Logs in Milliseconds

Many users export logs to third parties. In some cases, the volume of logs is so large that several logs arrive all at the same second. To construct a chain of events from the logs' arrival, you must know the specific order the logs arrive. Now you can send the time of arrival in a format that includes milliseconds.

Logs in milliseconds is intended for customers who:

- Use Log Exporter.
- Have environments with high logging rates.

This feature is disabled by default.

To control the feature on the Security Gateway side:

Note - This procedure restarts the FWD process.

- 1. Connect to the command line on the Security Gateway / each Cluster Member.
- 2. Log in to the Expert mode.
- 3. Go to the \$FWDIR/scripts/ directory:

cd \$FWDIR/scripts/

4. Run the script with the applicable parameter:

enable_disable_time_in_milli.sh {1 | 0}

- To enable the feature, run the script with the value 1.
- To disable the feature, run the script with the value 0.

To control the feature on the Log Server side:

- 1. Connect to the command line on the Log Server.
- 2. Log in to the Expert mode.
- To create a new exporter to export logs with the milliseconds format, run these commands:

```
cp_log_export add name <Name of Exporter> target-server <IP
Address of Target Server> target-port <Port Number on Target
Server> protocol {tcp | udp} time-in-milli {true | false}
cp log export restart name <Name of Exporter>
```

4. To modify an existing exporter to export logs with the milliseconds format, run these commands:

After Log Exporter is configured to export logs in milliseconds, the additional field is added to the time field.

Logs from Security Gateways without this feature enabled are exported with the value 000 for the additional time field.

API for Logs

Overview

API for Logs lets you use a single management API command to query for logs or top statistics. The API uses the same filter parameters as entered in the SmartConsole Logs tab search bar (see Configuration below).

Use Case

For customers who do not have access to SmartConsole and are familiar with using management APIs. The API for logs can be used inside a customer's automation script to get logs and run statistics on the logs without the need to access SmartConsole.

Run the API on the Management Server to get the logs from the environment.

With API for Logs, you can:

Fetch Logs:

You can fetch logs from any Log Server in the environment with a single management API command.

Input	Output
 Optional query parameters include: Logs type: Traffic / Audit Time-frame Filter criteria - Equivalent to query line in SmartConsole. Query from specific Log Servers. Limit results count 	Matching logs with all fields in JSON format.

Page through Logs:

Logs are fetched in small chunks (default and max limit is 100) so queries do not overload the Log Server.

The first "page" of results shows a limited number of logs.

To get the next set of results from a previously run query, enter the ${\tt query-id}$ from the API command.

Get Top Statistics:

Query for the top statistics for multiple fields, including top sources and top destinations.

- Fetch Log Attachments:
 - Each log in a query response indicates whether it contains an attachment.

An attachment can be a packet capture or Threat Emulation report.

- Another API command ("Log Attachments API" on page 286) fetches the attachment by log ID, and returns all the attachments in a single JSON response.
- Generate API Commands in SmartConsole:

In SmartConsole, click the button to generate an API command according to the currently presented query in the **Logs** tab.

This includes:

- Time-frame.
- Selected log servers.
- Filter criteria Query line.
- Limit of 50 results by default.

The mechanism for API for logs is the same as for SmartConsole log queries.

Permissions are enforced according to the logged in user profile.

Configuration

For a new logs query:

```
mgmt_cli show-logs new-query.filter product:<product name> new-
query.time-frame <time-frame> new-query.max-logs-per-request
<limit>
```

Parameter	Description
	The filter as entered in SmartConsole/SmartView. Type: String

Parameter	Description
time-frame	Specify the time frame to query logs. Valid values:
	 last-7-days last-hour today last-24-hours yesterday this-week this-month last-30-days all-time custom Default: last-7-days
	Type: String
custom-start	Type: String Must be in ISO861 format.
custom-end	Type: String Must be in ISO861 format .
max-logs-per-request	Valid values: 1-100 Default: 10 Type: String
type	Type of logs to return Valid values: logs, audit Default: logs Type: String
log-servers	List of IPs of log servers to query Default: all Type: String

To get results for custom time frames:

mgmt_cli show logs new-query.time-frame "custom" new-query.customstart YYYY-MM-DD new-query.custom-end YYYY-MM-DD

To get results for top statistics:

mgmt_cli show-logs new-query.filter product:<product name> newquery.top.field blades new-query.top.count <number> --format json -r true

Parameter	Description
count	Valid values: 1-50 Type: String
field	Valid values: sources destinations services actions blades origins users applications Type: String

To get more results for an existing query:

<pre>mgmt_cli show-logs query-id <query-id>session-id <session-id></session-id></query-id></pre>			
Parameter	Description		
query-id	Get the next page of the last run query with a specified limit. Type: String		
ignore-warnings	Ignore warnings if they exist. Type: Boolean		

Limitations

- The parameter "time-frame" in the API command does not accept this format as input: yyyymmddThhmmssZ
- The command does not support non-index mode log queries.

Log Attachments API

Log Attachments API provides an automated way to fetch log attachments. Each blade has its own type of attachments. For example, IPS logs contain packet captures, and Threat Emulation logs contain a summary report. Logs are not usually exported with all their attachments to save traffic load.

Use Cases:

This feature is intended for users who:

- Use Log Exporter to get log attachments in an external syslog system and use specific scripts in their automation process.
- Use Log Exporter and do not have (or want to provide) SmartConsole access to end users.
- Use API for Logs.

Log Attachments API supports all gateway versions.

There are two different modes to fetch log attachments:

- Log Exporter Provides attachment ID.
- API for Logs Log ID provided in the results.

Log Exporter

Log Exporter exports logs to a third party SIEM and adds an identifier called **log-attachment-id** which represents all attachment IDs, separated by a space. Log Exporter has a new parameter which lets you export the attachment-id.

You get the identifier and use it to get a json response with the desired attachment. The json format contains encoded base64 data of the attachment and must be decoded and put in a specified destination folder so it can be used.

To get a log attachment using Log Exporter, run these commands:

- cp_log_export set name <name> [domain-server <domain-server>] export-attachment-ids true
- 2. cp log export restart name <name> [domain-server <domain-server>
- mgmt_cli get-attachment attachment-id "<id from the exported log>"

To disable Log Exporter from exporting attachment IDs, run these commands:

- 1. cp_log_export set name <name> [domain-server <domain-server>]
 export-attachment-ids false
- 2. cp_log_export restart name <name> [domain-server <domainserver>]

API for Logs

Run a query for logs on the Management Server. In the json response, there is a field "id" for each log in the response. After you have the log-id, run the log attachments API and get all the attachments for that log.

To get an attachment for one of the log results:

1. Use the management API to fetch logs:

Run:mgmt_cli show-logs

 Run:mgmt_cli get-attachment id "<log id from the previous response>"

Command Line Reference

See the <u>R82 CLI Reference Guide</u>.

Appendix: Manual Syslog Parsing

Many third-party devices use the *syslog* format to log. The Log Server reformats the raw data to the Check Point log format to process third-party *syslog* messages. SmartEvent can take the reformatted logs and convert them into security events.

You can use the Log Parsing Editor to make a parsing file (see *"Importing Syslog Messages"* on page 52). As an alternative you can manually create a parsing file. This section shows you how to do that.

A

Warning - Manual modifications to out-of-the-box parsing files cannot be preserved automatically during an upgrade. Mark your modifications with comments so you can remember what changed.

Planning and Considerations

- 1. Learn the accurate structure of the logs the device generates with these guides.
 - a. The vendor logging guide, or other documentation that specifies the logs the device can generate and their structure. Documentation is important to make sure that you found all possible logs. Usually it is sufficient to write the parsing file.
 - b. Log samples, as many as possible. Use logs generated from the actual devices to be used with SmartEvent. Samples are important to examine the parsing file and to tune it accordingly.
- 2. Learn and know "The Free Text Parsing Language" on page 294 and the necessary parsing files and their location on the Log Server (see "The Parsing Procedure" on page 306).
- 3. Compare existing parsing files of an equivalent product.
- 4. Select the fields to extract from the log. The fields to extract are different from one device to another. But devices of the same category usually have equivalent log fields. For example:

Device Type	Typical Log Fields
Firewall, router and other devices that send connection based logs	source IP address, destination IP address, source port, destination port, protocol, accept/reject indication

Device Type	Typical Log Fields
IDS / IPS, application Firewall and other devices that send attack logs	attack name/ID

The Parsing Procedure

The procedure occurs on the Log Server and starts with the syslog daemon. The syslog daemon that runs on the Log Server receives the syslogs and calls for their parsing. The parsing involves many parsing files, which contain the different parsing definitions and specifications, and can be found in the **\$FWDIR/conf/syslog/** directory. In these files there are the device-specific parsing files, which define the actual parsing and extraction of fields, according to each device specific syslog format.

The parsing starts with the **syslog_free_text_parser.C** file. This file defines the different "*Dictionary*" on page 305 terms and parses the syslog. The file extracts fields, which are common to all syslog messages (such as PRI, date and time), and the machine and application that generated the syslog.

The syslog_free_text_parser.C file uses the allDevices.C file (which refers to two files: UserDefined/UserDefinedSyslogDevices.C and CPdefined/CPdefinedSyslogDevices.C).

- The first file (UserDefined/UserDefinedSyslogDevices.C) contains the names of the devices parsing files that the user defines.
- The second file (CPdefined/CPdefinedSyslogDevices.C) contains devices parsing files that Check Point defines.

The **allDevices.C** file goes over the device parsing files, and tries to match the incoming syslog with the syslog format parsed in that file.

After the parsing-file succeeds in the preliminary parsing of the syslog (that is, it matches the syslog format and is therefore the syslog origin), the remaining of the syslog is parsed in that file. If a match is not found, the file will continue to go over the Check Point device parsing files until it finds a match.

Manual Syslog Parsing

To parse a syslog file:

- 1. Create a new parsing file called **<device product name>.C**.
- 2. Put this file in the directory **\$FWDIR/conf/syslog/UserDefined** on the Log Server.
- On the Log Server, edit the file
 \$FWDIR/conf/syslog/UserDefined/UserDefinedSyslogDevices.C to add a line that includes the new parsing file. For example:

- 4. Optional: If required.
 - a. Create a new dictionary file called **<device product name>_dict.ini**. See "*Dictionary*" on page 305.
 - b. Put it in the directory **\$FWDIR/conf/syslog/UserDefined** on the Log Server.

A dictionary translates values with the same meaning from logs from different devices into a common value. This common value is used in the Event Definitions.

- c. Edit the file
 \$FWDIR/conf/syslog/UserDefined/UserDefinedSyslogDictionaries.C on the Log Server.
- d. Add a line to include the dictionary file. For example:

```
:filename ("snort_dict.ini")
```

5. To examine the parsing, send syslog samples to a Check Point Log Server.

To send syslog samples:

- 1. To configure the Log Server to accept syslogs, connect to the Security Management Server with SmartConsole.
- In Logs and Masters > Additional Logging Configuration, enable the property Accept Syslog messages.
- 3. Edit the Log Server network object.

4. Run the commands cpstop & cpstart, or fw kill fwd & fwd -n.

The fwd procedure on the Log Server restarts.

5. Send syslogs from the device itself, or from a syslog generator.

For example: Kiwi Syslog Message Generator, available at
http://www.kiwisyslog.com/software_downloads.htm#sysloggen.

Troubleshooting:

If SmartConsole does not show the logs as expected, there can be problems with the parsing files:

- If there is a syntax error in the parsing files, an error message shows. To read a specified error message, set the TDERROR_ALL_FTPARSER value to 5 before you run the procedure fwd -n.
- If the syslogs show in SmartConsole with 'Product syslog', the log was not parsed properly, but as a general syslog.
- If the Product field contains another product (not the one you have just added) this means there is a problem with the other product parsing file. Report this to the Check Point SmartEvent team.
- If the product reports correctly in the log, look for all the fields you extracted. Some of them are in the Information section. Some fields can be seen only when you select More Columns.

The Free Text Parsing Language

The free text parsing language enables to parse an input string, extract information, and define log fields. These log fields which show as part of the Check Point log in the Log Server. They are used in the definition of events. Each parsing file contains a tree of commands. Each command examines or parses part of the input string (sometimes it adds fields to the log as a result), and decides if to continue to parse the string (according to the success/failure of its execution).

The Commands

Each command consists of these parts:

- cmd name the name of the command.
- command arguments arguments that define the behavior of the command.
- on_success (optional) the next command executed if the current command execution succeeds.
- on_fail (optional) the next command executed if the current command execution fails.

Sample

:command (
:cmd_name (try)
:try_arguments
•
•
:on_success (
:command()
)
:on_fail (
:command()
)
)

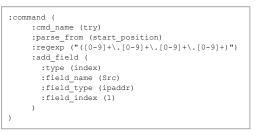
Try

The try command matches a regular expression against the input string.

Argument	Description
parse_ from	start_position - run the regular expression from the start of the input string. last_position - run the regular expression from the last position of the previous successful command.
regexp	The regular expression to match.
add_field	One or more fields to add to the result (only if the regular expression is successful).

'Try' Command Parameters

'Try' Command - Sample



In the above example, we try to match the regular expression " $([0-9]+\.[0-9]$

Group_try

The command group try executes one or more commands in one of these modes:

- "try_all" tries all commands in the group, and ignores the return code of the commands.
- "try_all_successively" tries all the commands in the group, and ignores the return code of the commands.

Each command tries to execute from the last position of the earlier successful command.

- "try until success" tries all the commands until one succeeds.
- "try until fail" tries all the commands until one fails.

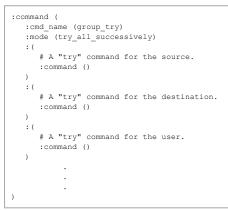
The command "group_try" is commonly used when it parses a "free-text" piece of a log, which contains a number of fields we want to extract.

For example:

%PIX-6-605004: Login denied from 194.29.40.24/4813 to outside:192.168.35.15/ssh for user 'root'

When you look at see this section of the log, you can use this structure:

'Group_try' Command - Sample 1



In this example, the first try command in the "group_try" block (for the source) is executed.

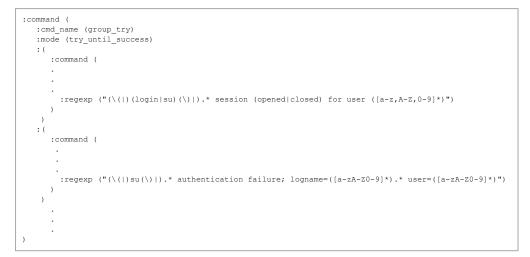
If the source, destination and user are not in a specified sequence in the syslog, use the "try_all" mode instead of "try_all_successively".

'Group_try' Command - Sample 2

In this example, the regular expressions in the different commands try to match more specified logs.

At most, one command in the group try block will be successful.

When it is found, it is not necessary to examine the others:



Note - When you add a new device, the first "try" command in the parsing file must use the "try_until_success" parameter:

```
:cmd_name (group_try)
:mode (try_until_success)
: (
?
)
```

Switch

This command enables to compare the result of a specified field against a list of predefined constant values.

'Switch' Command Parameters

Parameter	Description
Parameter	Description
field_name	The field name whose value is checked.
case	One or more case attributes followed by the value with which to compare.
default	Execute only if no relevant case is available. The default value is optional.

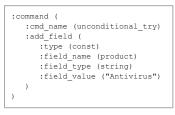
'Switch' Command - Sample

:command (
:cmd name (switch)	
:field name (msgID)	
:(
:case (302005)	
:command ()	
)	
: (
:case (302001)	
:case (302002)	
:command ()	
)	
:default (
:command()	
)	
)	

Unconditional_try

This command is an "empty" command that allows you to add fields to the result without any conditions.

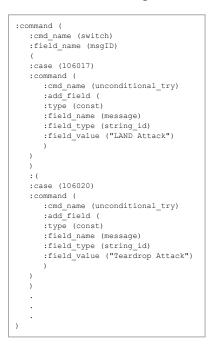
'Unconditional_try' Command - Sample 1



A common usage of unconditional try is with the switch command.

'Unconditional_try' Command - Sample 2

In this example, each message ID is attached with its corresponding "message" field which denotes its meaning.



Include

This command enables the inclusion of a new parsing file.

```
file_ The full path plus the file name of the file to be name included.
```

'Include' Command - Sample

```
:command (
    :cmd_name (include)
    :file_name ("c:\freeTextParser\device\antivirusPolicy.C")
)
```

Add_field

Each "add field" has some parameters:

- Type The type of the "add_field" command. This parameter has these possible values:
 - Index Part of the regular expression will be extracted as the field. The "field_ index" value denotes which part will be extracted (see "field index" bullet).
 - **Const** Add a constant field whose value does not depend on information extracted from the regular expression. See field value bullet.
- **field_name** the name of the new field.

There are some fields, which have corresponding columns in SmartConsole > Logs & Events > Logs.

This table shows the names to give these fields to show in their Logs & Events > Logs column (and not in the Information field, where other added fields appear):

Field Name to be Given	Column in Logs & Events > Logs
Src	Source
Dst	Destination
proto	Protocol
s_port	Source Port
product	Product
service	Service (when resolved includes the port and protocol.)

Field Name to be Given	Column in Logs & Events > Logs
Action	Action
ifname	Interface
User	User

When you name the above fields accordingly, they are placed in their correct column in Logs & Events > Logs.

This enables them to participate in all filtering done on these columns. These fields automatically take part in existing event definitions with these field names.

• **field_type** - the type of the field in the log.

This table shows the possible field types.

Field Type	Comment
int	
uint	
string	
ipaddr	For IP addresses used with the Src and Dst fields.
pri	Includes the facility and severity of a syslog.
timestmp	Includes the date and time of the syslog. Supports the format 'Oct 10 2019 15:05:00'.
time	Supports the format '15:05:00'.
string_id	For a more efficient usage of strings. Used when there is a finite number of possible values for this field.
action	Supports these actions: drop, reject, accept, encrypt, decrypt, vpnroute, keyinst, authorize, deauthorize, authcrypt, and default.
ifdir	0 - inbound 1 - outbound
ifname	For an interface name (used with the "ifname" field).
protocol	The field name should be "proto".

Field Type	Comment
port	For "service ", "s_port " or "port " fields.

The field type of the field names in this table must be as mentioned:

Field Name	Field Type
Src	ipaddr
Dst	ipaddr
proto	protocol
s_port	port
service	port
Action	action
ifname	ifname

- field_index or field_value The parameter used depends on the value of the "type" field.
 - If the "type" field is index, the "field_index" shows.
 - If the "type" field is const, the "field value" shows.

The "field_index" denotes which part of the regular expression is extracted, according to the grouping of the patterns.

To make this grouping, write a certain expression in brackets.

In this expression, the number in the "field_index" denotes the bracket number whose pattern is taken into account.

'Add_field' Command - Sample 1

:command (
:cmd name (try)
:parse from (last position)
:regexp ("Failed password for ([a-zA-Z0-9]+) from ([0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+) port ([0-9]+)")
:add field (
Type (index)
:field name (User)
:field type (string)
:field_index (1)
)
:add_field (
:type (index)
:field_name (Src)
:field_type (ipaddr)
:field_index (2)
)
:add_field (
:type (index)
:field_name (port)
:field_type (port)
:field_index (3)
)
)

The pattern for the User, "[a-zA-Z0-9]+", is located in the first pair of brackets. Therefore, the "field index" is one.

The pattern for the Source address, $"[0-9]+\..\.[0-9$

The pattern for the port is in the third pair of brackets.

In each parsed regular expression the maximum number of brackets must be up to nine.

To extract more than nine elements from the regular expression, break the expression into two pieces.

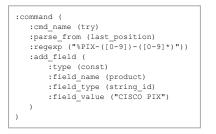
The first regular expression contains the first nine brackets.

The remaining of the regular expression is in the "on success" command.



'Add_field' Command - Sample 2

The "field value" is the constant value to be added.



dict_name is the name of the dictionary to use to convert the value. If the value is not found in the dictionary, the value is the result.

The free text parser enables us to use dictionaries to convert values from the log. These conversions are used to translate values from logs from different devices, with the same meaning, into a common value, which is used in the event definitions.

Each dictionary file is defined as an .ini file.

In the .ini file the section name is the dictionary name and the values are the dictionary values (each dictionary can include one or more sections).

[dictionary_name] Name1 = val1 Name2 = val2 [cisco_action] [3com_action] permitted = accept Permit = accept denied = reject Deny = reject

'Add_field' Command - Sample 3

```
:command (
    :cmd_name (try)
    :parse_from (start_position)
    :regexp ("list (.*) (permitted|denied) (icmp) ([0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+
```

Dictionary

The free text parser enables us to use dictionaries to convert values from the log. These conversions are used to translate values from logs from different devices, with the same meaning, into a common value, which is used in the event definitions.

Each dictionary file is defined as an .ini file. In the .ini file the section name is the dictionary name and the values are the dictionary values (each dictionary can include one or more sections).

```
[dictionary_name]
Name1 = val1
Name2 = val2
[cisco_action] [3com_action]
permitted = accept Permit = accept
denied = reject Deny = reject
```

Example

The reference to a dictionary in the parsing file is shown in this table:

```
:command (
    :cmd_name (try)
    :parse_from (start_position)
    :regexp ("list (.*) (permitted|denied) (icmp) ([0-9]+\.[0-
9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]
```

The Parsing Procedure

The procedure occurs on the Log Server and starts with the syslog daemon. The syslog daemon that runs on the Log Server receives the syslogs and calls for their parsing. The parsing involves many parsing files, which contain the different parsing definitions and specifications, and can be found in the **\$FWDIR/conf/syslog/** directory. In these files there are the device-specific parsing files, which define the actual parsing and extraction of fields, according to each device specific syslog format.

The parsing starts with the **syslog_free_text_parser.C** file. This file defines the different *"Dictionary" on page 305* terms and parses the syslog. The file extracts fields, which are common to all syslog messages (such as PRI, date and time), and the machine and application that generated the syslog.

The syslog_free_text_parser.C file uses the allDevices.C file (which refers to two files: UserDefined/UserDefinedSyslogDevices.C and CPdefined/CPdefinedSyslogDevices.C).

- The first file (UserDefined/UserDefinedSyslogDevices.C) contains the names of the devices parsing files that the user defines.
- The second file (CPdefined/CPdefinedSyslogDevices.C) contains devices parsing files that Check Point defines.

The **allDevices.C** file goes over the device parsing files, and tries to match the incoming syslog with the syslog format parsed in that file.

After the parsing-file succeeds in the preliminary parsing of the syslog (that is, it matches the syslog format and is therefore the syslog origin), the remaining of the syslog is parsed in that file. If a match is not found, the file will continue to go over the Check Point device parsing files until it finds a match.

Glossary

Α

Anti-Bot

Check Point Software Blade on a Security Gateway that blocks botnet behavior and communication to Command and Control (C&C) centers. Acronyms: AB, ABOT.

Anti-Spam

Check Point Software Blade on a Security Gateway that provides comprehensive protection for email inspection. Synonym: Anti-Spam & Email Security. Acronyms: AS, ASPAM.

Anti-Virus

Check Point Software Blade on a Security Gateway that uses real-time virus signatures and anomaly-based protections from ThreatCloud to detect and block malware at the Security Gateway before users are affected. Acronym: AV.

Application Control

Check Point Software Blade on a Security Gateway that allows granular control over specific web-enabled applications by using deep packet inspection. Acronym: APPI.

Audit Log

Log that contains administrator actions on a Management Server (login and logout, creation or modification of an object, installation of a policy, and so on).

В

Bridge Mode

Security Gateway or Virtual System that works as a Layer 2 bridge device for easy deployment in an existing topology.

С

Cluster

Two or more Security Gateways that work together in a redundant configuration - High Availability, or Load Sharing.

Cluster Member

Security Gateway that is part of a cluster.

Compliance

Check Point Software Blade on a Management Server to view and apply the Security Best Practices to the managed Security Gateways. This Software Blade includes a library of Check Point-defined Security Best Practices to use as a baseline for good Security Gateway and Policy configuration.

Content Awareness

Check Point Software Blade on a Security Gateway that provides data visibility and enforcement. Acronym: CTNT.

Cooperative Enforcement

Integration of an on-premises Harmony Endpoint Security Server and Security Gateway.

CoreXL

Performance-enhancing technology for Security Gateways on multi-core processing platforms. Multiple Check Point Firewall instances are running in parallel on multiple CPU cores.

CoreXL Firewall Instance

On a Security Gateway with CoreXL enabled, the Firewall kernel is copied multiple times. Each replicated copy, or firewall instance, runs on one processing CPU core. These firewall instances handle traffic at the same time, and each firewall instance is a complete and independent firewall inspection kernel. Synonym: CoreXL FW Instance.

CoreXL SND

Secure Network Distributer. Part of CoreXL that is responsible for: Processing incoming traffic from the network interfaces; Securely accelerating authorized packets (if SecureXL is enabled); Distributing non-accelerated packets between Firewall kernel instances (SND maintains global dispatching table, which maps connections that were assigned to CoreXL Firewall instances). Traffic distribution between CoreXL Firewall instances is statically based on Source IP addresses, Destination IP addresses, and the IP 'Protocol' type. The CoreXL SND does not really "touch" packets. The decision to stick to a particular FWK daemon is done at the first packet of connection on a very high level, before anything else. Depending on the SecureXL settings, and in most of the cases, the SecureXL can be offloading decryption calculations. However, in some other cases, such as with Route-Based VPN, it is done by FWK daemon.

CPUSE

Check Point Upgrade Service Engine for Gaia Operating System. With CPUSE, you can automatically update Check Point products for the Gaia OS, and the Gaia OS itself.

Custom Report

User-defined report for a Check Point product, typically based on a predefined report.

D

DAIP Gateway

Dynamically Assigned IP (DAIP) Security Gateway is a Security Gateway, on which the IP address of the external interface is assigned dynamically by the ISP.

Data Loss Prevention

Check Point Software Blade on a Security Gateway that detects and prevents the unauthorized transmission of confidential information outside the organization. Acronym: DLP.

Data Type

Classification of data in a Check Point Security Policy for the Content Awareness Software Blade.

Distributed Deployment

Configuration in which the Check Point Security Gateway and the Security Management Server products are installed on different computers.

Dynamic Object

Special object type, whose IP address is not known in advance. The Security Gateway resolves the IP address of this object in real time.

Ε

Endpoint Policy Management

Check Point Software Blade on a Management Server to manage an on-premises Harmony Endpoint Security environment.

Event

Record of a security or network incident that is based on one or more logs, and on a customizable set of rules that are defined in the Event Policy.

Event Correlation

Procedure that extracts, aggregates, correlates, and analyzes events from the logs.

Event Policy

Set of rules that define the behavior of SmartEvent.

Expert Mode

The name of the elevated command line shell that gives full system root permissions in the Check Point Gaia operating system.

G

Gaia

Check Point security operating system that combines the strengths of both SecurePlatform and IPSO operating systems.

Gaia Clish

The name of the default command line shell in Check Point Gaia operating system. This is a restricted shell (role-based administration controls the number of commands available in the shell).

Gaia Portal

Web interface for the Check Point Gaia operating system.

Н

Hotfix

Software package installed on top of the current software version to fix a wrong or undesired behavior, and to add a new behavior.

HTTPS Inspection

Feature on a Security Gateway that inspects traffic encrypted by the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol for malware or suspicious patterns. Synonym: SSL Inspection. Acronyms: HTTPSI, HTTPSI.

ICA

L

Internal Certificate Authority. A component on Check Point Management Server that issues certificates for authentication.

Identity Awareness

Check Point Software Blade on a Security Gateway that enforces network access and audits data based on network location, the identity of the user, and the identity of the computer. Acronym: IDA.

Identity Logging

Check Point Software Blade on a Management Server to view Identity Logs from the managed Security Gateways with enabled Identity Awareness Software Blade.

Internal Network

Computers and resources protected by the Firewall and accessed by authenticated users.

IPS

Check Point Software Blade on a Security Gateway that inspects and analyzes packets and data for numerous types of risks (Intrusion Prevention System).

IPsec VPN

Check Point Software Blade on a Security Gateway that provides a Site to Site VPN and Remote Access VPN access.

J

Jumbo Hotfix Accumulator

Collection of hotfixes combined into a single package. Acronyms: JHA, JHF, JHFA.

Κ

Kerberos

An authentication server for Microsoft Windows Active Directory Federation Services (ADFS).

Log Server

L

Dedicated Check Point server that runs Check Point software to store and process logs.

Logging & Status

Check Point Software Blade on a Management Server to view Security Logs from the managed Security Gateways.

Μ

Management Interface

(1) Interface on a Gaia Security Gateway or Cluster member, through which Management Server connects to the Security Gateway or Cluster member. (2) Interface on Gaia computer, through which users connect to Gaia Portal or CLI.

Management Server

Check Point Single-Domain Security Management Server or a Multi-Domain Security Management Server.

Manual NAT Rules

Manual configuration of NAT rules by the administrator of the Check Point Management Server.

Mobile Access

Check Point Software Blade on a Security Gateway that provides a Remote Access VPN access for managed and unmanaged clients. Acronym: MAB.

Multi-Domain Log Server

Dedicated Check Point server that runs Check Point software to store and process logs in a Multi-Domain Security Management environment. The Multi-Domain Log Server consists of Domain Log Servers that store and process logs from Security Gateways that are managed by the corresponding Domain Management Servers. Acronym: MDLS.

Multi-Domain Server

Dedicated Check Point server that runs Check Point software to host virtual Security Management Servers called Domain Management Servers. Synonym: Multi-Domain Security Management Server. Acronym: MDS.

Ν

Network Object Logical object that represents different parts of corporate topology - computers, IP addresses, traffic protocols, and so on. Administrators use these objects in Security Policies.

Network Policy Management

Check Point Software Blade on a Management Server to manage an on-premises environment with an Access Control and Threat Prevention policies.

0

Open Server

Physical computer manufactured and distributed by a company, other than Check Point.

Ρ

Predefined Report

Default report included in a Check Point product that you can run right out of the box.

Provisioning

Check Point Software Blade on a Management Server that manages large-scale deployments of Check Point Security Gateways using configuration profiles. Synonyms: SmartProvisioning, SmartLSM, Large-Scale Management, LSM.

Q

QoS

Check Point Software Blade on a Security Gateway that provides policy-based traffic bandwidth management to prioritize business-critical traffic and guarantee bandwidth and control latency.

R

Report

Summary of network activity and Security Policy enforcement that is generated by Check Point products, such as SmartEvent.

Rule

Set of traffic parameters and other conditions in a Rule Base (Security Policy) that cause specified actions to be taken for a communication session.

Rule Base

All rules configured in a given Security Policy. Synonym: Rulebase.

S

SecureXL

Check Point product on a Security Gateway that accelerates IPv4 and IPv6 traffic that passes through a Security Gateway.

Security Gateway

Dedicated Check Point server that runs Check Point software to inspect traffic and enforce Security Policies for connected network resources.

Security Management Server

Dedicated Check Point server that runs Check Point software to manage the objects and policies in a Check Point environment within a single management Domain. Synonym: Single-Domain Security Management Server.

Security Policy

Collection of rules that control network traffic and enforce organization guidelines for data protection and access to resources with packet inspection.

SIC

Secure Internal Communication. The Check Point proprietary mechanism with which Check Point computers that run Check Point software authenticate each other over SSL, for secure communication. This authentication is based on the certificates issued by the ICA on a Check Point Management Server.

SmartConsole

Check Point GUI application used to manage a Check Point environment - configure Security Policies, configure devices, monitor products and events, install updates, and so on.

SmartDashboard

Legacy Check Point GUI client used to create and manage the security settings in versions R77.30 and lower. In versions R80.X and higher is still used to configure specific legacy settings.

SmartEvent Correlation Unit

SmartEvent software component on a SmartEvent Server that analyzes logs and detects events.

SmartEvent Server

Dedicated Check Point server with the enabled SmartEvent Software Blade that hosts the events database.

SmartProvisioning

Check Point Software Blade on a Management Server (the actual name is "Provisioning") that manages large-scale deployments of Check Point Security Gateways using configuration profiles. Synonyms: Large-Scale Management, SmartLSM, LSM.

SmartUpdate

Legacy Check Point GUI client used to manage licenses and contracts in a Check Point environment.

Software Blade

Specific security solution (module): (1) On a Security Gateway, each Software Blade inspects specific characteristics of the traffic (2) On a Management Server, each Software Blade enables different management capabilities.

Standalone

Configuration in which the Security Gateway and the Security Management Server products are installed and configured on the same server.

System Counter

SmartView Monitor data or report on status, activity, and resource usage of Check Point products.

Threat Emulation

Check Point Software Blade on a Security Gateway that monitors the behavior of files in a sandbox to determine whether or not they are malicious. Acronym: TE.

Threat Extraction

Check Point Software Blade on a Security Gateway that removes malicious content from files. Acronym: TEX.

U

Т

Updatable Object

Network object that represents an external service, such as Microsoft 365, AWS, Geo locations, and more.

URL Filtering

Check Point Software Blade on a Security Gateway that allows granular control over which web sites can be accessed by a given group of users, computers or networks. Acronym: URLF.

User Directory

Check Point Software Blade on a Management Server that integrates LDAP and other external user management servers with Check Point products and security solutions.

۷

VSX

Virtual System Extension. Check Point virtual networking solution, hosted on a computer or cluster with virtual abstractions of Check Point Security Gateways and other network devices. These Virtual Devices provide the same functionality as their physical counterparts.

VSX Gateway

Physical server that hosts VSX virtual networks, including all Virtual Devices that provide the functionality of physical network devices. It holds at least one Virtual System, which is called VS0.

Zero Phishing

Ζ

Check Point Software Blade on a Security Gateway (R81.20 and higher) that provides real-time phishing prevention based on URLs. Acronym: ZPH.